

UC-NRLF



\$B 606 086

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

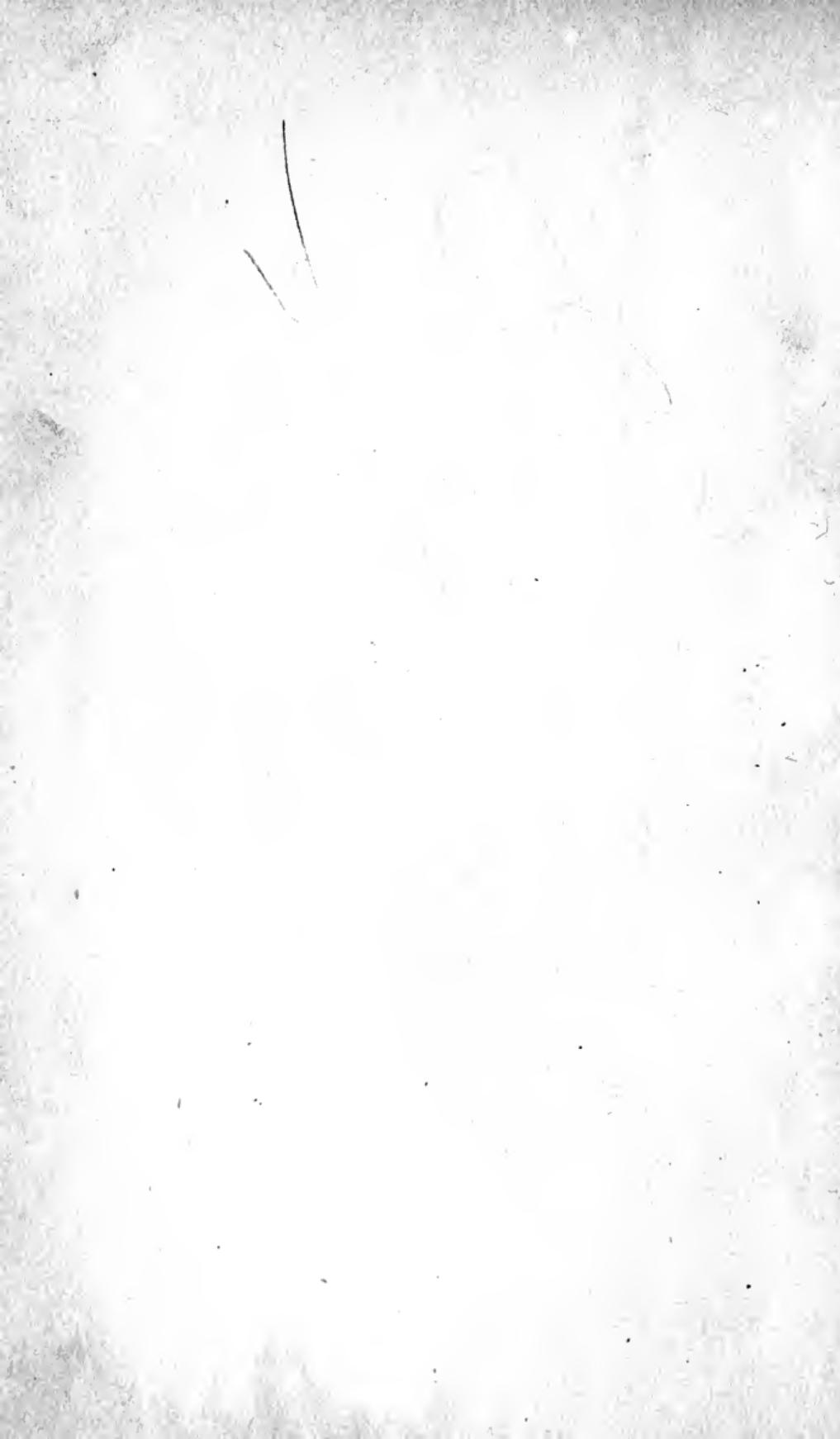
GIFT OF

Co. 10

Class



Chappaqua
Westchester Co.
New York



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

WHITNEY'S MODERN LANGUAGE BOOKS.

WHITNEY-KLEMM GERMAN SERIES.

By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, *Professor in Yale College*, and L. R. KLEMM, *Author of Lese- und Sprachbücher, etc.*

RUDIMENTS OF GERMAN. (*In Preparation.*)

| | |
|--|--------|
| GERMAN BY PRACTICE..... | \$1 10 |
| ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER..... | 1 00 |
| A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR..... | 1 50 |
| BRIEF GERMAN GRAMMAR..... | 75 |
| GERMAN READER..... | 1 80 |
| GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY..... | 3 50 |
| GERMAN TEXTS. Edited by Prof. W. D. WHITNEY. | |

Lessing's *Minna von Barnhelm*. Annotated by W. D. WHITNEY, Prof. in Yale College..... 75 cents.

Schiller's *Wilhelm Tell*. Annotated by Prof. A. SACHTLEBEN, of Charleston, S. C..... 75 cents.

Goethe's *Faust*. Annotated by WM. COOK..... 80 cents.

Goethe's *Iphigenie auf Tauris*. Annotated by Prof. FRANKLIN CARTER, Williams College..... 75 cents.

Schiller's *Maria Stuart*. Annotated by E. S. JOYNES, Prof. in University of South Carolina..... 80 cents.

Lessing's *Nathan der Weise*. Annotated by H. C. G. BRANDT, Prof. in Hamilton College..... 75 cents.

WHITNEY'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.

A Practical French Grammar, with Exercises and Illustrative Sentences from French Authors..... \$1 60

HENRY HOLT & CO., Publishers, NEW YORK.

A BRIEF

GERMAN GRAMMAR

WITH REFERENCES TO HIS LARGER GRAMMAR

BY

WILLIAM D. WHITNEY

Professor of Sanskrit and Comparative Philology and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College, Author of a German Grammar, Reader, and Dictionary, Editor of German Texts, etc., etc.

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.



NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
F. W. CHRISTERN
BOSTON: CARL SCHOENHOF

849

W623

**COPYRIGHT, 1885,
BY
HENRY HOLT & CO.**



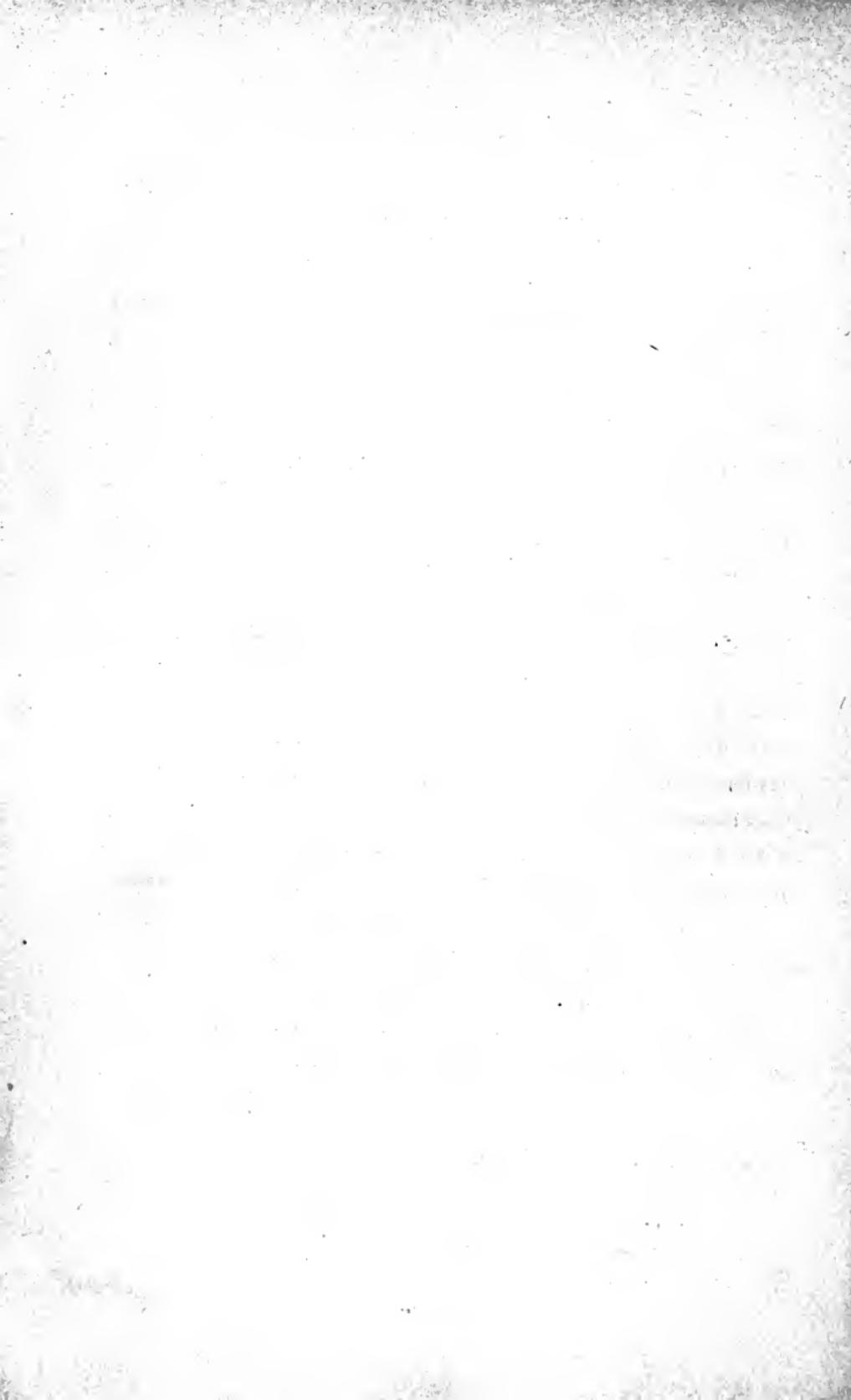
P R E F A C E.

THIS work has been prepared at the instance of many teachers, and because there appeared to be a call for a German grammar which should present the most important facts of the language in the briefest form consistent with accuracy and clearness of statement. It follows, as a matter of course, the same general method, and uses the same terminology, as the author's larger work (A Compendious German Grammar, etc., H. Holt & Co.), which has been approved by wide use now during more than fifteen years ; and it may be used as an introduction to the other. In order to facilitate the transition, and for the convenience of those who, while using it, desire to refer to the fuller statements and explanations of the larger grammar, the numbers of the latter's paragraphs corresponding to those of this volume are added in parenthesis to its own paragraph-numbers. The exercises may be used according to the discretion of the teacher and the special needs and capacities of his class ; and, where immediate advance to reading is desired, the English-into-German exercises may in many cases be well omitted until the grammar comes to be gone over a second time. The selected sentences at the end are intended to form the ground for such further grammatical drill as shall be found desirable.

W. D. W.

YALE COLLEGE, May, 1885.

206577



CONTENTS.

| | |
|--|---------|
| ALPHABET | §§ 1—2 |
| PRONUNCIATION..... | 3—43 |
| Vowels, 3—13 ; diphthongs, 14—18 ; consonants, 19—42 ; accent, 43. | |
| DECLENSION..... | 44—117 |
| Articles, 48—50 ;—nouns, 51—69 ; first declension of nouns, 53—61 ; second, 62—63 ; irregular, 64 ; foreign nouns, 65 ; proper names, 66—69 ;—adjectives, 70—82 ; adjective declension, 72—77 ; adjective as noun and adverb, 78—79 ; comparison, 80—82 ;—pronouns, 83—111 ; personal, 83—87 ; possessives, 88—90 ; demonstratives, 91—95 ; interrogatives, 96—100 ; relatives, 101—106 ; indefinite, 107—111 ;—numerals, 112—117. | |
| CONJUGATION. | 118—168 |
| Simple forms, 118 ; principal parts, 119 ; conjugations, 120 ; auxiliaries, 122—124 ; compound forms, 126—128 ; New conjugation, 129—132 ; Old conjugation, 134—139 ; mixed conjugation, 141—147 ; modal auxiliaries, 142—146 ; passive conjugation, 149—154 ; reflexive, 155—156 ; impersonal verbs, 157—158 ; compound verbs, 159—168 ; separable, 160—162 ; inseparable, 163—167 ; of either character, 168. | |
| ADVERBS..... | 169—170 |
| PREPOSITIONS..... | 171—176 |
| Prepositions governing genitive, 172 ; dative, 173 ; accusative, 174 ; dative or accusative, 175. | |
| CONJUNCTIONS..... | 177—180 |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF DECLENSION AND OF CONJUGATION..... | 181—201 |
| Genitive uses, 182—183; dative, 184; accusative, 185—187; present tense, 189; future, 190; subjunctive mode, 191—192; conditional sentence, 191; indirect discourse, 192; infinitive, 193—198; participles, 199—201. | |
| ORDER OF THE SENTENCE | 202—206 |
| Normal order, 203; inverted, 204; transposed, 205. | |
| DERIVATION..... | 207—211 |
| Verbs, 208; nouns, 209—210; adjectives, 211. | |
| COMPOUND WORDS | 212—215 |
| Verbs, 213; nouns, 214; adjectives, 215. | |
| ENGLISH AND GERMAN..... | 216—217 |
| THE GERMAN LANGUAGE..... | 218 |
| SELECTED SENTENCES FOR PRACTICE IN APPLYING THE RULES OF THE GRAMMAR | pp. 106—113 |
| GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY..... | pp. 115—126 |
| ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY..... | pp. 127—131 |
| LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS..... | pp. 133—139 |
| INDEX..... | pp. 141—143 |

LIST OF EXERCISES.

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| 1, 2. Nouns of the first declension..... | 13 |
| 3, 4. Nouns of all declensions..... | 17 |
| 5, 6. Adjectives of various declension | 18 |
| 7, 8. Adjectives as nouns and adverbs, and compared.. | 25 |
| 9, 10. Personal and possessive pronouns..... | 30 |
| 11, 12. Demonstrative, interrogative, and relative pro-nouns..... | 35 |
| 13, 14. Numerals | 39 |
| 15, 16. Simple forms of the auxiliaries | 44 |
| 17, 18. Verbs of the New conjugation | 49 |
| 19, 20. Verbs of the Old conjugation..... | 55 |
| 21, 22. Modal auxiliaries..... | 59 |
| 23, 24. Passive, impersonal, and reflexive verbs..... | 63 |
| 25, 26. Compound verbs, separable and inseparable..... | 71 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| 27, 28. Adverbs and prepositions | 77 |
| 29, 30. Conjunctions..... | 80 |
| 31, 32. Special uses of the forms of declension | 83 |
| 33, 34. Special uses of the forms of conjugation..... | 87 |
| 35, 36. Infinitives and Participles..... | 92 |

LIST OF EXERCISES OF SELECTED SENTENCES.

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. Declension of nouns | 106 |
| 2. Declension of adjectives..... | 106 |
| 3. Adjectives as nouns and adverbs, and compared .. | 107 |
| 4. Pronouns | 108 |
| 5. Numerals..... | 108 |
| 6. Verbs of Old and New conjugations..... | 109 |
| 7. Modal auxiliaries | 109 |
| 8. Passive, reflexive, and impersonal verbs..... | 110 |
| 9. Compound verbs, separable and inseparable..... | 111 |
| 10. Special uses of the forms of declension..... | 111 |
| 11. Special uses of the forms of conjugation..... | 112 |
| 12. Infinitives and participles..... | 112 |





A a

B b

C c

D d

E e

A a L b L v D d f n

F f

G g

H h

I i

J j

K k

F f G g H h I i J j K k

L l

M m

N n

O o

P p

L l M m N n O o P p

Q q

R r

S s

T t

U u

Q q R r S s T t U u

V v

W w

X x

Y y

Z z

V v W w X x Y y Z z

COMPOUND CONSONANTS.

ch

ck

ss

sz

sch

sp

st

th

tz

ch ck ss sz sch sp st th tz

Amt, Lili, Löffl,
Damm, fib, Ivan, Gold,
Fabis, Igul, Jagi, Rogl,
Lamb, Mam, Haft,
Ort, Pfarr, Gual, Ring,
Pam, Pin, Tiff, Uff,
Voll, Voll, Zeit, Aller
Anfang ist Pfarrer.
Ruhm ist Vibor.
Pfarrer ist Gold.



ALPHABET.

1. (2) The letters of the German Alphabet are as follows:

| German letters. | Roman equiv'ts. | German name. | German letters. | Roman equiv'ts. | German name. |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| À, à | a | â (ah) | Ñ, ñ | n | ěn |
| ß, ß | b | bā (bay) | Ò, ò | o | o |
| Œ, œ | c | tsā | Þ, þ | p | pā |
| Ð, ð | d | dā | Ð, ð | q | kū (koo) |
| Œ, œ | e | ā | Ñ, ñ | r | ěr |
| ß, ß | f | ěf | Þ, Þ, ß | s | ěs |
| Œ, œ | g | gā | Ò, ò | t | tā |
| ß, ß | h | hâ | Ü, ü | u | ū (oo) |
| Œ, œ | i | ē (ee) | ß, ß | v | fou (found) |
| Œ, œ | j | yōt | W, w | w | vā |
| Œ, œ | k | kâ | Ξ, ù | x | ix |
| Œ, œ | l | ěl | Ý, ÿ | y | ipsilon |
| Œ, œ | m | ěm | Þ, Þ | z | tsět |

German is also often printed in the same letters as English.

2. (5) The German uses capital initial letters, like the English, at the beginning of sentences, of lines of poetry, and of direct quotations ; but also, for all nouns, and words used as nouns ; and for pronouns of the third person, when used in address with the value of those of the second person ; but not for adjectives of nationality : thus, *englisch*, 'English'; *französisch*, 'French'; *die deutsche Sprache*, 'the German language.'

PRONUNCIATION.

VOWELS.

3. (7) Each simple vowel sound is either long or short. The distinction must be learned chiefly by practice ; but the following rules will be found of service : A vowel doubled, or followed by *h*, is long ; a vowel is short before a double consonant, and usually before a group of two consonants.

4. (8) *ä, a* has the sound of *a* in *far, father* : long, in *Aal, Bahn*; short, in *Ball, Hand*.

5. (9) *ɛ, e* long is pronounced almost like our *e* in *they*; short *e* is nearly our "short *e*" in *men* : long, in *Heer, mehr*; short, in *denn, Welt*.

But final unaccented *e* is pronounced nearly like *e* in *butter* : thus, *Gabe, gute*. The *e* of the unaccented endings *en, er, el*, is nearly or quite silent, and what sound it has is the *but*-sound (nearly as in English *token, poker, uncle*) : thus, *haben, guten, Hader, guter, Wandel, wandeln*.

6. (10) *ɔ, i* long is like our "long *e*," or *i* in *pique* ;

when short, it is more like our "short *i*" in *pin*: long, in *ihn*, *dir*; short, in *billig*, *ist*.

7. (11) *O*, *o* has the tone of our "long *o*": long, in *Moor*, *Ton*; short, in *soll*, *Gott*.

8. (12) *U*, *u* long is our *u* in *rule*; *u* short is nearly our *u* in *pull*: long, in *Uhr*, *gut*; short, in *Brust*, *Stunde*.

9. (13) *Y*, *y* is found only in foreign words, and is ordinarily pronounced like an *i* in the same situation: thus, *Syrup*, *Asyl*.

MODIFIED VOWELS.

10. (14) The modified vowels (or *umlauts*) are usually written with an *e* after them, when the vowel modified is a capital: thus, *Æ*, etc.; otherwise with a couple of dots over the modified letter: thus, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

They are products of the alteration or "modification" of an *a* or *o* or *u*-sound by the influence of an *i*-sound originally occurring in the following syllable.

11. (15) *Æ*, *ä* has the sound of an open *e*, rather opener than our "short *e*": long, in *Kläger*, *prägen*; short, in *Hände*, *Apfel*.

12. (16) *œ*, *ö* is nearest in tone to our *u* in *hurt*, but verging toward the *e* of *they*. It is closely akin with the French *eu*-sounds. Long, in *schön*, *hören*; short, in *öffnen*, *Hölle*.

13. (17) *œ*, *ü* is the same sound with the French *u*. To utter it, first round the lips to the *u*-position, and then, without moving them, fix the tongue to say *i* (*ee*)—or *vice versa*. Long, in *nebel*, *fühl*; short, in *Glück*, *dünn*.

DIPHTHONGS.

14. (18) *ße* is an *i* lengthened by the addition of an *e*: thus, *die*, *tief*.

15. (19) *a*. *ei* is pronounced almost like the "long *i*" of *isle*, *aisle*: thus, *Bein*, *sei*.

b. *ai* (much rarer) has the same sound: thus, *Hain*, *Mai*.

c. Instead of *ai*, *ei* are sometimes written *ay*, *ey*.

16. (20) *ü* is pronounced like the English *ou*, *ow*, in *house*, *down*: thus, *Haus*, *Auge*.

17. (21) *eu* is nearly like the English *oi* in *boil*: thus, *heute*, *euer*. *œu*, *œ* is pronounced in the same manner: thus, *œuglein*, *œrume*.

18. (22) *ui* is pronounced like *we*: thus, *pfui*!

CONSONANTS.

19. (23) *B*, *b* has the same sound as in English, excepting when final or followed by a consonant, when it is like *p*: thus, *Bube*, *Stab*, *gehabt*.

20. (24) *C*, *c* is hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant; but soft before *e*, *i*, *ÿ*; in the latter case it is pronounced like *ts*: thus, *Cato*, *Concert*, *Ocean*.

21. (25) *D*, *d* has the sound of English *d*, excepting at the end of a word, or of a syllable before another consonant, when it is changed to *t*: thus, *Damm*, *Brød*, *mild*.

22. (26) *F*, *f* has the same sound as in English.

23. (27) *G*, *g* has its hard sound as in *go*, *give*, excepting at the end of a word or syllable, when it assumes the value of *ȝ* (38): thus, *Gans*, *Tag*, *täglich*.

24. (28) **ß, ß** has the sound of English *h* when it begins a word, and also in the suffixes *heit*, *ßt*. Elsewhere it is silent. **Þ, Þ** is the same as *t*. Thus, *ßof*, *Kindheit*, *þun*.

25. (29) **ß, j** is always pronounced like our *y* consonant: thus, *Jahr*, *jung*.

26. (30-3) **ß, f, ß, l, ß, m, ß, n, ß, p, p**. These letters have the same sounds as their English correspondents.

27. (34) **ß, q** is always followed by *u*, and *qu* is pronounced like *kv* (with labial *v*): thus, *ßual*, *quer*.

28. (35) **ß, r** has a more forcible utterance than in English. In every situation it must be clearly heard: thus, *ßand*, *roß*, *Arbeiter*, *marmorner*.

29. (36) **ß, ß** has its hissing sound only when doubled, final, or standing before a consonant; before a vowel it approaches the sound of our *z*. Before *t* and *p* at the beginning of a word it is more generally and properly pronounced like *sh*: thus, *Glaß*, *wissen*, *Sohn*, *Besen*, *steif*, *ßpur*.

30. (37) **ß, t** in words properly German has the sound of English *t*. In certain terminations (especially *tion*) of words from the Latin or French, it is pronounced like *ts*: thus, *ßat*, *ßafel*, *Nation*.

31. (38) **ß, v** at the beginning of a word has the sound of English *f*. When it occurs elsewhere, as also in foreign words, it is pronounced like our *v*: thus, *viel*, *Bater*, *Sslave*, *Bacanz*.

32. (39) **ß, w** is nearly like *v* in English: thus, *Welle*, *Wahn*; but after a consonant in the same

syllable it must be uttered between the lips alone: thus, *zwei*, *ſchwer*.

33. (40) *ꝫ, r* has the sound of *ks*; but when initial, it is pronounced as *z*: thus, *ꝫrt*, *ꝫenien*.

34. (41) *ꝝ, y* in German is a vowel only.

35. (42) *ꝑ, ɔ* is like *ts*: thus, *ꝑinn*, *ꝑolz*.

CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

36. (43) *a.* *ꝫ* has two sounds: one deeper or more guttural, nearly our throat-clearing or hawking sound; the other more palatal, over the middle of the tongue, approaching the *sh*-sound, or nearly as we should pronounce *hy* in *hyen*. The former sound it has after *a, o, u, au*; the latter, after any other vowel or a consonant: thus, *Bach*, *doch*, *Buch*, *auch*; *recht*, *ich*, *Bücher*, *Fächer*, *Löcher*, *reich*, *euch*, *däuchte*, *durch*, *Doldh*, *mancher*.

b. *ꝫs*, when the *s* belongs to the stem of the word, is pronounced as *ks* or *x*: thus, *Wachs*, *wachsen*.

c. *ꝫ* initial (in words of foreign origin) is hard like *k*, except before *e, i*, where it usually has the palatal *ɸ*-sound (like *hy*): thus, *Charakter*, *Christ*, *Chemie*, *China*; in words from the French, it often has the French sound (like *sh*): thus, *Charade*.

37. (44) *ꝫf* is equivalent to double *f*: thus, *Wäfer*, *Bäfer*.

38. (45) *ꝝng* is like *ng* in *sing*: thus, *Singen*, *Finger*, *Gang*.

39. (46) *a.* *ꝫp* is pronounced as these two let-

ters (but the *f* with the lips alone): thus, *Pfund*, *schlüpfen*.

b. *Ph* has the sound of *f*: thus, *Phase*, *Phosphor*.

40. (48) *Sch* is the equivalent of our *sh*: thus, *Schiff*, *Lisch*.

41. (49) *ß* is pronounced as a double *s*, and is written instead of *ss* at the end of a word, or after a long vowel or diphthong, or before a consonant: thus, *Baß*, *häßlich*. (In the English character, *ß* is generally written *ss*.)

42. (51) *ß* is the written equivalent of a double *z*, but is pronounced like a single *z*: thus, *Plaß*, *sitzen*.

ACCENT.

43. (55) *a.* The accent, in words not compound, is usually on the radical syllable: thus, *dan'fen*, *danf'bar*, *Danf'barkeit*.

But the accent is taken by the suffix *ei*, and by *i* or *ie* in verbs having the infin. in *ieren* or *ieren*.

b. In compound words, the accent is usually that of the first member: thus, *aus'gehen*, *Aus'gang*, *Haus'bewohner*.

Exceptions are: compounds with inseparable prefixes (163), as *bedan'fen*; many with *all-* and *un-*, as *allmäch'tig*, *unend'lich*; compounds of direction, as *südost'*; and most compound particles, as *dahin'*, *jubor'*.

c. Foreign words do not follow these rules, and are often accented on the final: thus, *Nation'*.

DECLENSION.

44. (58-9) There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL, and four cases: the NOMINATIVE, answering to the English nominative; the GENITIVE, answering nearly to the English possessive, or objective with *of*; the DATIVE, corresponding to the English objective with *to* or *for*; and the ACCUSATIVE, nearly the same as our objective without a preposition.

45. (60) There are three genders, MASCULINE, FEMININE, and NEUTER.

The names of most objects having conspicuous sex are masculine or feminine, according as those objects are male or female; but in great part the genders of German nouns follow arbitrary rules, and must be learned by experience.

But the following rules will be found of practical value:

46. (61) *a.* Masculine are: names of seasons, months, and days of the week, of the points of the compass, and of stones; also many derivatives formed from roots by change of vowel, all those ending in *ing* and *ling*, and many which end in *el*, *en*, *er*.

Thus: *der Spruch*, 'the speech,' *der Nagel*, 'the nail,' *der Finger*, 'the finger,' *der Liebling*, 'the darling.'

b. Feminine are most names of rivers, of plants, fruits, and flowers; many derivatives ending in *e* and *t*; and all those formed by the secondary suffixes *ei*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *ung*, and *in*.

Thus: *die Sprache*, 'speech,' *die Macht*, 'might,' *die Weisheit*, 'wisdom,' *die Ordnung*, 'order.'

c. Neuter are most names of countries and places, of metals, the names of the letters, and other parts of speech used as nouns, all diminutives formed with *chen* and *lein*, most nouns formed by the suffixes *sel*, *sal*, *nib*, and *thum*, most collectives and abstracts formed by the prefix *ge*, and all infinitives used as nouns.

Thus: *das Mädchen*, 'the girl,' *das Rätsel*, 'the riddle,' *das Gespräch*, 'talk,' *das Stehen*, 'the act of standing.'

d. Compound nouns usually take the gender of their final member.

e. Nouns of foreign origin, though with many exceptions, are masculine, feminine, or neuter as in the tongues from which they come.

47. (62) Adjectives and most pronouns are inflected in the singular in all three genders, in order to agree with the noun which they qualify. They make no distinction of gender in the plural.

ARTICLES.

48. (63) The articles are declined as follows:

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------|------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| | <i>masc.</i> | <i>fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> | <i>m. f. n.</i> |
| Nom. | der | die | das | die |
| Gen. | des | der | des | der |
| Dat. | dem | der | dem | den |
| Acc. | den | die | das | die |

‘the’
‘of the’
‘to or for the’
‘the’

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

Singular.

| | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|---------------|
| Nom. | ein | eine | ein | ‘a’ |
| Gen. | eines | einer | eines | ‘of a’ |
| Dat. | einem | einer | einem | ‘to or for a’ |
| Acc. | einen | eine | ein | ‘a.’ |

49. (65) The acc. neuter *das* and the dat. masc. and neuter *dem* are often contracted with a preceding preposition into one word: thus, *ans*, *aufs*, *ins*, *fürs*, *zum*, *beim*, etc. In such contracted forms,

a preposition ending in *n* loses its *n* before *m*: thus, *am*, *im*, *vom*. The dat. fem. *der* is in like manner contracted with *zu* to *zur*. Other similar contractions sometimes occur.

50. (66) *Special Uses of the Definite Article.*—*a.* The definite article is used with abstract nouns and those taken in a universal sense: thus, *das Leben ist kurz*, 'life is short'; *das Gold ist gelb*, 'gold is yellow.'

b. It is often used where we use a possessive adjective: thus, *der Vater schüttelte den Kopf*, 'the father shook *his* head.'

c. In many other cases the article is used or omitted where the contrary is the usage in English: thus, especially, it is prefixed to the names of seasons, months, and days of the week, to names of streets and mountains, to the feminine names of countries, and often to other proper names: thus, *im Winter*, 'in winter'; *der Mai*, 'May'; *in der Schweiz*, 'in Switzerland'; *der franke Georg*, 'sick George.'

NOUNS.

51. (68) In order to decline a noun, we need to know how it forms its genitive singular and its nominative plural; and upon these two cases depends the classification of the declensions.

52. (71-2) In all noun declension, feminines are invariable, in the singular, and the nom., gen., and acc. plural are alike; and in all declension whatever, the acc. singular of the fem. and neut. is like the nom., and the dat. plural (except of personal pronouns) ends in *n*.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

53. (69) 1. The great majority of masculine nouns, and all neuters, form their genitive singular by adding *s* or *es* to the nominative. These constitute the FIRST DECLENSION; which is then

divided into classes according to the mode of formation of the nominative plural.

54. (75) The FIRST CLASS adds no ending to form the plural; its nominatives are alike in both numbers, except that in a few words (about 20 masc., and the 2 fem.) the vowel is modified for the plural.

55. (76) To this class belong all masculines and neuters ending in *el*, *er*, *en*; a few neuters having the prefix *ge* and ending in *e*; all the neuter diminutives in *chen* and *lein*; and two feminines, *Mutter*, 'mother,' and *Tochter*, 'daughter.'

56. (77) Nouns of this class add only *s* in the gen. sing., and take no *e* in the dative.

57. (81) The SECOND CLASS forms the plural by adding *e*, and usually modifies the vowel of the principal syllable, though with many exceptions.

58. (82) To this class belong the greater number of masculines, many neuters, some monosyllabic feminines, and also the feminines ending in *nif* and *fal*.

59. (83) Masculines and neuters take *s* or *es* in the gen. sing.; the dat. is like the nom., or adds *e*.

a. The ending *es* is generally taken by monosyllables, *s* by polysyllables; but most words may take either, *es* belonging to a more serious style, and *s* being more colloquial. Words ending in a sibilant always take *es*.

b. The use of *e* in the dat. is nearly parallel to that of *es* in the genitive.

60. (84) The great majority of masculines take the modified vowel in the plural, also all feminines, except those in *nif* and *fal*.

61. (87-9) The THIRD CLASS adds *er* to form the nom. plural, and modifies the vowel of the stem. This class is composed chiefly of neuters, with a few masculines. The gen. and dat. sing. are formed as in the second class.

EXAMPLES : 1. FIRST CLASS.

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| • | <i>Spaten</i> , 'spade,' m. | <i>Gebirge</i> , 'mountain range,' n. | <i>Mutter</i> , 'mother,' f. |
| <i>Singular.</i> | | | |
| N. | <i>der Spaten</i> | <i>das Gebirge</i> | <i>die Mutter</i> |
| G. | <i>des Spatens</i> | <i>des Gebirges</i> | <i>der Mutter</i> |
| D. | <i>dem Spaten</i> | <i>dem Gebirge</i> | <i>der Mutter</i> |
| A. | <i>den Spaten</i> | <i>das Gebirge</i> | <i>die Mutter</i> |
| <i>Plural.</i> | | | |
| N. | <i>die Spaten</i> | <i>die Gebirge</i> | <i>die Mütter</i> |
| G. | <i>der Spaten</i> | <i>der Gebirge</i> | <i>der Mütter</i> |
| D. | <i>den Spaten</i> | <i>den Gebirgen</i> | <i>den Müttern</i> |
| A. | <i>die Spaten</i> | <i>die Gebirge</i> | <i>die Mütter</i> |

2. SECOND CLASS.

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| • | <i>Sohn</i> , 'son,' m. | <i>Jahr</i> , 'year,' n. | <i>Hand</i> , 'hand,' f. |
| <i>Singular.</i> | | | |
| N. | <i>der Sohn</i> | <i>das Jahr</i> | <i>die Hand</i> |
| G. | <i>des Sohnes</i> | <i>des Jahres</i> | <i>der Hand</i> |
| D. | <i>dem Sohne</i> | <i>dem Jahre</i> | <i>der Hand</i> |
| A. | <i>den Sohn</i> | <i>das Jahr</i> | <i>die Hand</i> |
| <i>Plural.</i> | | | |
| N. | <i>die Söhne</i> | <i>die Jahre</i> | <i>die Hände</i> |
| G. | <i>der Söhne</i> | <i>der Jahre</i> | <i>der Hände</i> |
| D. | <i>den Söhnen</i> | <i>den Jahren</i> | <i>den Händen</i> |
| A. | <i>die Söhne</i> | <i>die Jahre</i> | <i>die Hände</i> |

3. THIRD CLASS.

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Haus, | Weib, | Mann, | Irrthum, |
| 'house,' n. | 'woman,' n. | 'man,' m. | 'error,' m. |

Singular.

| | | | |
|---------------|--------|------------|----------|
| N. das Haus | Weib | der Mann | Irrthum |
| G. des Hauses | Weibes | des Mannes | Irrthums |
| D. dem Hause | Weibe | dem Manne | Irrthum |
| A. das Haus | Weib | den Mann | Irrthum |

Plural.

| | | | |
|----------------|---------|-------------|------------|
| N. die Häuser | Weiber | die Männer | Irrthümer |
| G. der Häuser | Weiber | der Männer | Irrthümer |
| D. den Häusern | Weibern | den Männern | Irrthümern |
| A. die Häuser | Weiber | die Männer | Irrthümer |

VOCABULARY.

| | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| das Brod, =es, =öde. | bread. | der Käse, =ses, =se. | cheese. |
| der Bruder, =rs, =üder. | brother. | das Kind, =des, =der. | child. |
| das Buch, -ches, =ücher. | book. | das Kleid, =des, =der. | dress, garment. |
| die Butter. | butter. | das Mädelchen, =ns, =n. | girl. |
| er, pers. pron. he. | | der Mann, =nes, =änner. | man. |
| der Garten, =ns, =ärten. | garden. | die Mutter, =ütter. | mother. |
| das Gebirge =ges, =ge. | moun- tain-range. | der Onkel, =ls, =l. | uncle. |
| gibt, 3d sing. | gives. | find, 3d pl. | are. |
| haben, 3d pl. | have. | der Sohn, =nes, =öhne. | son. |
| die Hand, =ände. | hand. | die Tochter, =öchter. | daughter. |
| hat, 3d sing. | has. | und, conj. | and. |
| das Haus, -ses, =äufer. | house. | der Vater, =rs, =äter. | father. |
| in, prep. | in. | das Weib, =es, =ber. | woman, wife. |
| ist, 3d sing. | is. | | |

EXERCISE 1.

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

1. Der Onkel ist ('is') ein Bruder des Vaters. 2. Das Weib ist die Mutter der Kinder. 3. Die Mutter hat ('has')

Brod, Butter und Käse. 4. Der Mann gibt ("gives") dem Weibe das Kleid. 5. Er ("he") gibt ein Buch den Kindern. 6. Der Sohn des Mannes ist in dem Garten. 7. Die Männer haben ("have") Bücher in den Händen. 8. Das Haus ist im Gebirge. 9. Die Mädchen sind ("are") Töchter eines Vaters und einer Mutter.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| and, und. | in, in. |
| are, sind. | is, ist. |
| book, Buch. | man, Mann. |
| bread, Brod. | month, der Monat, =ts, =te. |
| brother, Bruder. | mother, Mutter. |
| butter, Butter. | mountain-range, Gebirge. |
| chair, der Stuhl, =les, =ühle. | part, der Theil, =ls, =le. |
| child, Kind. | picture, das Bild, =ds, =der. |
| day, der Tag, =gs, =ge. | room, das Zimmer, =rs, =r. |
| father, Vater. | son, Sohn. |
| garden, Garten. | table, der Tisch, =sches, =sche. |
| gives, gibt. | tree, der Baum, =ms, =äume. |
| has, hat. | uncle, Onkel. |
| he, er. | woman, Weib. |
| house, Haus. | year, das Jahr, =res, =re. |

EXERCISE 2.

1. The father has a brother ; he is an uncle. 2. The child is the son of the father and of the mother.
3. The mother gives bread and butter to the children.
4. The man gives a book to the son of the woman.
5. The father has a house in the mountain-range.
6. In the house are tables, chairs, and books. 7. He has trees in the garden, and pictures in the rooms.
8. The month is a part of the year ; the day is a part of the month.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

62. (91) To the second declension belong only masculine and feminine nouns. They form all the cases of the plural by adding *n* or *en* to the theme, and masculines take the same ending in the oblique cases of the singular, while feminines are unvaried in the singular.

63. (92) *a.* Nearly all the feminine nouns in the language are of this declension; also masculines of more than one syllable in *e*, as *Bote*, 'messenger'; a few monosyllabic root-words, as *Bär*, 'bear,' *Graf*, 'count'; and many words of foreign origin, as *Student*, *Monarch*.

No noun of this declension modifies its vowel in the plural.

b. EXAMPLES:

Feminines:

Seite,
'side.'

That,
'deed.'

Knabe,
'boy.'

Student,
'student.'

Singular.

| | | | |
|--------------|------|------------|-----------|
| N. die Seite | That | der Knabe | Student |
| G. der Seite | That | des Knaben | Studenten |
| D. der Seite | That | dem Knaben | Studenten |
| A. die Seite | That | den Knaben | Studenten |

Plural.

| | | | |
|---------------|--------|------------|-----------|
| N. die Seiten | Thaten | die Knaben | Studenten |
| G. der Seiten | Thaten | der Knaben | Studenten |
| D. den Seiten | Thaten | den Knaben | Studenten |
| A. die Seiten | Thaten | die Knaben | Studenten |

c. Feminines in *in* (or *inn*) make their plural in *innen*: thus, *Fürstin*, *Fürstinnen*. *Herr*, 'sir, man,' has *Herrn* in the singular and *Herren* in the plural.

IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

64. (97-9) *a.* A few masculines and neuters are of a mixed declension: namely, of the first in the singular and the second in the plural; as, *Staat* (=es, =en), 'state'; *Auge* (=es, =en), 'eye'; and a number of nouns of foreign origin, as *Insekt* (=es, =en); *Dok'tor* (*Doktor*s, *Dokto'ren*). Others form their plural according to either the first or the second declension: as *Bett*, 'bed,' pl. *Bette* or *Betten*.

b. A few masculines in en drop the n in the nom. sing. usually: thus, *der Name* or *Namen*, 'name.' *Der Schmerz*, 'pain,' and *das Herz*, 'heart,' have lost the en of their original themes in the nom. and acc. sing.; *Schmerz* follows also the mixed declension.

c. A number of nouns have two forms of the plural, belonging to two different significations: thus, *Band*, n., 'bond' and 'ribbon'; *Bande*, 'bonds,' but *Bänder*, 'ribbons.'

d. Compounds of *Mann*, 'man,' substitute *Leute* for *Mann* in the plural when taken collectively: thus, *Kaufmann*, 'merchant,' *Kaufleute*, 'merchants'; but *zwei Kaufmänner*, 'two merchants.'

NOUNS OF FOREIGN ORIGIN.

65. (101) Most nouns of foreign origin are declined like German nouns, and belong to the regular declensions.

a. Nouns in um, from the Latin, form a plural in en: as, *Studium*, *Studien*.

b. A few from the French and English form their plural, as also the gen. sing., in s: thus, *seidene Sophas*, 'silken sophas.'

PROPER NAMES.

66. (103) Names of countries and places admit only the genitive ending s. If they end in a sibilant, they are not declined: thus, *Berlins*, 'of Berlin'; *von París*, 'of Paris.'

67. (104) Names of persons are now generally used with the article to indicate the case. When without the article, the noun adds s in the genitive: thus, *Schillers*.

But masculines ending in a sibilant, and feminines in *e*, take *en* in the genitive: thus, *Magens*, *Sophiens*; and sometimes *en* in the other oblique cases.

68. (106) The plurals of masculines, with or without the article, have *e* (rarely *en*), with *n* added in the dative; of feminines, *n* or *en*. *Jesus* and *Christus* are usually declined as Latin nouns.

69. (108) A proper name following a title that has the article before it is left unvaried; if without the article, it takes the genitive sign, and the title is unvaried: thus, *der Sohn Kaiser Friedrichs*, 'the son of the Emperor Frederick'; but, *Sohn des Kaisers Friedrich*. But *Herr* is always declined. An appended title is declined, whether the preceding name be declined or not: thus, *Alexander des Großen Geschichte*, 'Alexander the Great's history.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| das Auge, =ges, =gen. eye. | der Name, =ens, =en. name. |
| der Band, =des, =änder. ribbon. | der Preuße, =en, =en. Prussian. |
| das Bett, =ttes, =ten. bed. | der Prinz, =jen, =zen. prince. |
| die Frau, =en. woman, wife. | der Schmerz, =zens, =zen. pain. |
| der Friede, =dens, =den. peace. | Schmidt. Smith. |
| Friedrich. Frederick. | Sophie, =ens. Sophie. |
| der Graf, =fen, =fen. count. | die Stadt, =äfte. city. |
| die Gräfin, =innen. countess. | der Student, =ten, =ten. student. |
| der Herr, =rrn, =rren. Mr., sir. | die Tugend, =den. virtue. |
| das Herz, =zens, =zen. heart. | die Wahrhaftigkeit, =ten. truthfulness. |
| der Kaufmann, =nnns, =änner. merchant. | Wilhelm, =ms. William. |
| chant. | |
| der Knabe, =en, =en. boy. | |

EXERCISE 3.

NOUNS OF ALL DECLENSIONS.

- Der Knabe ist Student.
- Der Graf ist des Knaben Vater.
- Die Frauen der Grafen sind Gräfinnen.
- Die Wahrhaftigkeit ist eine Tugend.
- Friede ist in den Herzen der Männer und Frauen.
- Der Preuße hat den Namen

Friedrich. 7. Die Männer sind Kaufleute. 8. Der Kaufmann hat Bänder in der Hand. 9. Das Kind hat Schmerzen in den Augen, und ist im Bett. 10. Der Sohn des Prinzen Friedrich Wilhelm ist Student in der Stadt Bonn. 11. Er gibt Sophiens Buch dem Max, Sohne des Herrn Schmidt.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Augusta, Auguste, -ens. | grandchild, der Enkel, -lß, -l. |
| ball, der Ball. -llß, -älle. | merchant, Kaufmann. |
| band, das Band, -des, -de. | monarch, der Monarch, -chen, |
| city, Stadt. | -chen. |
| count, Graf. | ribbon, Band. |
| cousin, der Vetter, -rs, -rn. | society, die Gesellschaft, -ten. |
| daughter, die Tochter, -öchter. | student, Student. |
| earth, die Erde, -en. | virtue, Tugend. |
| emperor, der Kaiser, -rs, -r. | William, Wilhelm. |
| empress, die Kaiserin, -innen. | |

EXERCISE 4.

1. The student is the count's cousin.
2. The son of the Emperor William and of the Empress Augusta is in Berlin.
3. He has sons, daughters, and grandchildren.
4. The merchants give the women the ribbons.
5. The virtues are the bonds of society (the society : 50 a).
6. The house of the monarch is in the city [of] Paris.
7. The earth is a ball.

ADJECTIVES.

70. (114) The adjective is declined only when used attributively or substantively; it remains uninflected when used as predicate, in apposition, or as adverb.

71. (115) The attributive adjective always precedes the noun (if expressed) which it qualifies;

it is varied for number and case, and (in the singular only) for gender, and agrees in all these particulars with its noun.

72. (118) Each attributive adjective is subject to two different modes of declension, according as it is or is not preceded by certain limiting words.

73. (119–20) *a.* The endings of the FIRST DECLENSION are nearly the same with those of the definite article.

b. The SECOND DECLENSION has only the two endings *e* and *en*: namely, *e* in the sing. nom. of all genders and in the accus. fem. and neuter, and elsewhere *en*. Thus:

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS OF DECLENSION.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Singular. Plural.

| | m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. |
|----|-----|-----|-----|----------|
| N. | -er | -e | -es | -e |
| G. | -es | -er | -es | -er |
| D. | -em | -er | -em | -er |
| A. | -en | -e | -es | -e |

SECOND DECLENSION.

Singular. Plural.

| | m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. |
|----|-----|-----|-----|----------|
| N. | -e | -e | -e | -en |
| G. | -en | -en | -en | -en |
| D. | -en | -en | -en | -en |
| A. | -en | -e | -e | -en |

c. Adjectives ending in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, usually reject the *e* of the final syllable before the declensional ending: thus, *edel*, 'noble,' *edler*, *edle*, *edles*, etc.

d. *Hoch*, 'high,' loses *e* when declined: thus, *hoher*, *hohe*, *hohes*, etc.

74. (121) *a.* The adjective takes the endings of the first declension, unless preceded by an article, pronoun, or pronominal adjective, which itself has those endings; if so preceded, it has the endings of the second declension.

Thus, as we say, *der Mann*, 'the man,' so also

guter Mann, 'good man,' but der gute Mann, 'the good man'; as die Frauen, 'the women,' so gute Frauen, and gute schöne Frauen, but die guten schönen Frauen, 'the good handsome women'; as dem Kinde, 'to the child,' so gutem Kinde, and gutem, schönem, artigem Kinde, but dem guten, schönen, artigen Kinde, 'to the good, handsome, well-behaved child.'

b. Before a genitive noun ending in *s*, the adjective is more usually of the second declension: thus, kalten Wassers, 'of cold water,' frohen Muthes, 'with joyous spirit.'

c. The ending *es* of the nom. and acc. neuter is often dropped, especially in poetry: thus, schön Wetter, 'fine weather,' falsch Geld, 'false money.'

75. (122) Complete declension of an adjective, *gut*, 'good,' in both forms.

FIRST DECLENSION.

| | Singular. | | | Plural. |
|----|-----------|-------|-------|----------|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. |
| N. | guter | gute | gutes | gute |
| G. | gutes | guter | gutes | guter |
| D. | gutem | guter | gutem | guten |
| A. | guten | gute | gutes | gute |

SECOND DECLENSION.

| | Singular. | | | Plural. |
|----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. |
| N. | der gute | die gute | das gute | die guten |
| G. | des guten | der guten | des guten | der guten |
| D. | dem guten | der guten | dem guten | den guten |
| A. | den guten | die gute | das gute | die guten |

76. (124) As *ein*, *kein* and the possessives (89) lack the distinctive endings in a part of their cases

(nom. sing. masculine and nom. and acc. sing. neuter), the adjective following those cases retains the ending of the first declension. In this way arises a sort of third or 'mixed' declension.

For example: *ein guter*, 'a good,' *keine gute*, 'no good,' *sein gutes*, 'his good,' *ihre guten*, 'their good,' are declined thus:

| Singular. | | | Plural. |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. |
| N. <i>ein guter</i> | <i>keine gute</i> | <i>sein gutes</i> | <i>ihre guten</i> |
| G. <i>eines guten</i> | <i>keiner guten</i> | <i>seines guten</i> | <i>ihrer guten</i> |
| D. <i>einem guten</i> | <i>keiner guten</i> | <i>seinem guten</i> | <i>ihren guten</i> |
| A. <i>einen guten</i> | <i>keine gute</i> | <i>sein gutes</i> | <i>ihre guten</i> |

77. (125) *a.* The adjective has the ending of the first declension after an indeclinable limiting word, as a numeral; and after *manch*, *welch*, *solch*, etc., when used without an ending of declension; thus, *zwei gute Kinder*, 'two good children'; *manch bunte Blumen*, 'many variegated flowers.'

b. (127) After indefinite pronominal adjectives, the ending of the first declension is generally taken in the nom. and accus. plural; thus, *einige große Kästen*, 'sundry big boxes.'

c. After a personal pronoun, the same ending is taken as after a possessive; thus, *ich armer Thor*, 'I poor fool,' but *wir armen Thoren*, 'we poor fools.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>aber</i> , <i>conj.</i> but. | <i>glücklich</i> , <i>adj.</i> happy. |
| <i>alt</i> , <i>adj.</i> old. | <i>gut</i> , <i>adj.</i> good. |
| <i>der Apfel</i> , - <i>ls</i> , <i>Apfel</i> . apple. | <i>habe</i> , 1st <i>sing.</i> have. |
| <i>arm</i> , <i>adj.</i> poor. | <i>häflich</i> , <i>adj.</i> ugly. |
| <i>artig</i> , <i>adj.</i> good, well-behaved. | <i>hübsch</i> , <i>adj.</i> pretty. |
| <i>einige</i> , <i>adj. pl.</i> some. | <i>ich</i> , <i>pron.</i> I. |
| <i>es</i> , <i>pron.</i> it. | <i>immer</i> , <i>adj.</i> always. |
| <i>die Freude</i> , - <i>den</i> . joy. | <i>klein</i> , <i>adj.</i> small, little. |
| <i>fromm</i> , <i>adj.</i> pious. | <i>neu</i> , <i>adj.</i> new. |

| | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| nicht, <i>adj.</i> not. | schwarz, <i>adj.</i> black. |
| reich, <i>adj.</i> rich. | üß, <i>adj.</i> sweet. |
| schlecht, <i>adj.</i> bad. | weiß, <i>adj.</i> white. |
| schön, <i>adj.</i> handsome, beautiful. | zärtlich, <i>adj.</i> tender. |
| der Schuh, =hes, =he. shoe. | |

EXERCISE 5.

ADJECTIVES OF VARIOUS DECLENSION.

1. Gute, fromme Kinder sind die Freude zärtlicher Mütter.
2. Der alte Mann gibt dem artigen Knaben ein schönes Buch.
3. Das kleine Kind der armen alten Frau hat alte, häßliche Schuhe.
4. Die hübsche Tochter des reichen Grafen gibt dem armen Kinde neue Schuhe.
5. Ein gutes Kind ist immer glücklich.
6. Das Mädchen ist artig, aber es ist nicht hübsch.
7. Weißes Brod ist gut, aber schwarzes Brod ist nicht schlecht.
8. Ich armer Mann habe schlechtes Brod.
9. Er hat einige süße Nüpfel.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| always, immer. | king, der König, =gs, =ge. |
| bad, schlecht, unartig. | large, groß. |
| beautiful, schön. | little, klein. |
| black, schwarz. | no, <i>adj.</i> kein. |
| box, der Kasten, =ns, =n. | noble, edel. |
| boy, der Knabe, =ben, =ben. | not, nicht. |
| clothes, die Kleider, <i>pl. n.</i> | old, alt. |
| cold, kalt. | poor, arm. |
| good, gut. | people, die Leute, <i>n. pl.</i> |
| happy, glücklich. | rich, reich. |
| high, hoch. | warm, warm. |

EXERCISE 6.

1. The good father has bad children.
2. A bad child is not happy.
3. The beautiful woman gives warm good clothes to the poor cold children.
4. The little

son of the poor merchant is a good boy. 5. He gives the bad boys black bread. 6. The beautiful house of the rich count is in the high mountain-range. 7. The old king is a noble man. 8. We (wir) poor people have no white bread. 9. Rich merchants are not always good people. 10. The beautiful ribbons are in the large box.

78. (129) *c.* An adjective is often used as a substantive, either with or without an article or other determining word. It is then written with a capital letter, but retains its adjective inflection, taking the endings of the first or the second declension according to the rules already given: thus, *der Gute*, 'the good man'; *Ihre Rechte*, 'your right hand.'

b. After *etwas*, 'something,' *was*, 'what, something,' *nichts*, 'nothing,' an adjective is treated as a substantive in apposition; it is therefore of the first declension, and written with a capital initial: thus, *etwas Gutes*, 'something good,' *nichts Neues*, 'nothing new.'

79. (130) Any adjective may be used in its uninflected form as an adverb.

Thus, *ein ganzes Haus*, 'a whole house'; but *ein ganz schönes Haus*, 'a wholly beautiful house,' and *ein ganz schön gebautes Haus*, 'a quite beautifully built house.'

80. (135) *a.* The endings forming the comparative and superlative of adjectives are *er* and *est* (sometimes shortened to *r* and *st*).

b. (136) Monosyllabic adjectives whose vowel is *a*, *e*, or *u* more often modify those vowels in the comparative and superlative.

EXAMPLES :

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| schön, 'beautiful' | schöner | schönst |
| reich, 'rich' | reicher | reichst |
| heiß, 'hot' | heißer | heißest |
| alt, 'old' | älter | ältest |
| kurz, 'short' | kürzer | kürzest |
| froh, 'glad' | froher | frohest |
| bedeutend, 'significant' | bedeutender | bedeutendst |

81. (139) a. A few adjectives are compared irregularly: thus,

| | | |
|---------------|--------------|--------------------|
| gut, 'good' | besser | best |
| viel, 'much' | mehr, mehrer | meist |
| hoch, 'high' | höher | höchst |
| nah, 'nigh' | näher | nächst |
| groß, 'great' | größer | größt (or größest) |

b. A few are defective: thus,

| | | |
|---|---------|----------|
| — | minder | mindest |
| — | mittler | mittelst |
| — | inner | innerst |
| — | äußer | äußerst |

82. (140) a. In general, comparatives and superlatives are declined like simple adjectives: thus, *schönerer*, *der schönste*, etc.

The superlative usually has an article or other limiting word before it, and so is of the second declension.

b. The comparative is freely used in its uninflected form as predicate and as adverb; but not the superlative; for this, as predicate, is substituted an adverbial phrase with *am*, 'at the': thus, *die Tage sind kürzer im Herbst*, und *am kürzesten im Winter*, 'the days are shorter in autumn, and shortest in winter'; as adverb, such phrases with *am*, *zum*, *aufs*, etc.

c. There are a few exceptions: *allerliebst*, 'charming,' as predicate; *höchst*, 'in the highest degree,' *meist*, 'for the most part,' as adverbs.

d. To the superlative is sometimes prefixed *aller*, to intensify its meaning: thus, *der allerschönste*, 'the most beautiful of all.'

e. Occasionally, adjectives are compared by putting before them *mehr*, 'more,' and *am meisten*, 'most.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>allerliebst</i> , <i>adj.</i> charming. | <i>der Mensch</i> , <i>-schen</i> , <i>-schen</i> . man, |
| <i>als</i> , <i>conj.</i> as, than. | person. |
| <i>am</i> , <i>an</i> den. | <i>die Rose</i> , <i>-sen</i> . rose. |
| <i>äußerst</i> , <i>adj.</i> uttermost, extreme. | <i>rot</i> , <i>adj.</i> red. |
| <i>das Frühjahr</i> , <i>-rs</i> , <i>-re</i> . spring. | <i>der Sommer</i> , <i>-rs</i> , <i>-r</i> . summer. |
| <i>geizig</i> , <i>adj.</i> avaricious, greedy. | <i>ungeheuer</i> , <i>adj.</i> monstrous, huge. |
| <i>groß</i> , <i>adj.</i> large. | <i>warm</i> , <i>adj.</i> warm. |
| <i>heiß</i> , <i>adj.</i> hot. | <i>der Winter</i> , <i>-rs</i> , <i>-r</i> . winter. |
| <i>Karl</i> , Charles. | <i>die Zierte</i> , <i>-den</i> . ornament. |
| <i>der König</i> , <i>-gs</i> , <i>-ge</i> . king. | |

EXERCISE 7.

ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS AND ADVERBS, AND COMPARED.

1. *Der Arme ist der Bruder des Reiches.* 2. *Der Kaufmann ist reicher als ('than') der Graf, aber der König ist*

am allerreichsten. 3. Die Tage sind wärmer im Frühjahr als im Winter; sie ('they') sind am heißesten im Sommer. 4. Die Tugend ist die schönste Zierde des Menschen. 5. Das kleine Kind ist artiger als die größeren. 6. Karl ist der schönste der kleinen Knaben. 7. Die Schöne hat eine schöne rothe Rose in der schönen Hand. 8. Die Rose ist allerliebst. 9. Der Mann ist äußerst reich, aber er ist ungeheuer geizig.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| autumn, der Herbst, -tes, -te. | sister, die Schwester, -rn. |
| blue, blau. | tall, groß, hoch. |
| flower, die Blume, -men. | true, wahr. |
| learned, gelehrt. | truthfulness, die Wahrhaftigkeit. |
| give, 3d. pl. geben. | feit, -ten. |
| pretty, hübsch. | we, wir. |
| red, rot. | winter, Winter. |
| seek, 1st pl. suchen. | wise, weise. |
| short, kurz. | young, jung. |

EXERCISE 8.

1. The rich give bread and clothes to the poor.
2. The merchant is richer than the count, and poorer than the king.
3. The days are shorter in the autumn, and shortest in the winter.
4. Truthfulness is the most beautiful virtue.
5. The oldest of the sisters is the tallest, but the younger [ones] are prettier, and the youngest is prettiest-of-all.
6. Red flowers are prettier than blue [ones].
7. We seek (suchen) the good, the beautiful, and the true.
8. The learned [man] is not always a wise [man].

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

83. (151) The personal pronouns are thus declined:

| FIRST PERSON. | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | |
| N. | ich | 'I' | wir 'we' |
| G. | meiner, mein | 'of me' | unser 'of us' |
| D. | mir | 'to me' | uns 'to us' |
| A. | mich | 'me' | uns 'us' |
| SECOND PERSON. | | | |
| N. | du | 'thou' | ihr 'ye' |
| G. | deiner, dein | 'of thee' | euer 'of you' |
| D. | dir | 'to thee' | euch 'to you' |
| A. | dich | 'thee' | euch 'you' |
| THIRD PERSON. | | | |
| | <i>Singular.</i> | | |
| | masc. | fem. | neut. |
| N. | er | 'he' | sie 'she' |
| G. | seiner, sein | 'of him' | ihrer 'of her' |
| D. | ihm | 'to him' | ihr 'to her' |
| A. | ihn | 'him' | sie 'her' |
| | | es | es |
| <i>Plural.</i> | | | |
| | | m. f. n. | |
| N. | sie | | 'they' |
| G. | ihrer | | 'of them' |
| D. | ihnen | | 'to them' |
| A. | sie | | 'them' |

84. (155) *a.* The personal pronouns of first and second person are also used in the dative and accusative reflexively: thus, *ich wasche mich*, 'I wash myself,' *du gibst dir*, 'thou givest (to) thyself.' But for the third person there is a special reflexive pronoun, *sich*, used for both cases and for all numbers and genders: thus, *er wascht sich*, 'he washes himself,' *sie geben sich*, 'they give (to) themselves.'

b. The reflexive pronouns are made emphatic by adding *selbst* or *selber*, 'self.'

c. The plural reflexives often have a reciprocal sense, or mean 'one another': thus, *sie geben sich*, 'they give one another.'

85. (153) In ordinary address, either to one person or to more than one, the pronoun of the third person plural, *Sie*, etc., is used, corresponding to our *you*; it is then written with a capital (but its reflexive *sich* is not so written); the verb agrees with it in the third person plural: thus, *Sie waschen sich*, 'you wash yourself (or yourselves).' *Du* (and its plural *ihr*) is used in the language of familiarity, of poetry, and of worship.

86. (154) The pronoun of the third person singular generally takes the gender of the noun to which it relates. But it is seldom used in the genitive and dative for things without life; for it is usually substituted a demonstrative, *der* or *der-
selbe*; or, if governed by a preposition (in dat. or accus.), a combination of *da*, 'there,' with the preposition: thus, *damit*, 'with it or them,' *dafür*, 'for it or them' (literally, 'therewith, therefor').

87. (154) a. The neuter *es*, 'it,' is used as the indefinite and impersonal subject of a verb, answering to English *it* or *there*: thus, *es ist sein Bruder*, 'it is his brother,' *es war etwas darin*, 'there was something in it.' Often it serves merely to change the position of the subject: thus, *es sieht uns nicht die Mutter*, 'mother sees us not.' The verb after it agrees in number with the following noun (predicate or logical subject): thus, *es sind seine Brüder*, 'it is his brothers.'

b. *Es* is also indefinite predicate or object, to be rendered by 'so' and the like: thus, *ich bin es nicht mehr*, 'I am so no longer.' Instead of 'it is I,' and so on, the German says 'I am it,' *ich bin es*, etc.

POSSESSIVES.

88. (157) The possessives are: *mein* 'my,' *dein* 'thy,' *sein* 'his, its,' *ihr* 'her,' *unser* 'our,' *euer* 'your,' *ihr* 'their' (and *Sie* 'your').

The possessive *Ihr* 'your' corresponds to *Sie* 'you' (85), being *ihr* 'their' written with a capital.

89. (159) a. The possessives are adjectives only, and are declined as such, according to both the first and second declensions (75). But when used attributively, before a following qualified noun, they have in the singular the forms of *ein* (48: *i. e.* sing. nom. masc. and nom. and accus. neut. *mein*, not *meiner* and *meines*). As predicates, they are uninflected. Thus, *der Becher ist dein*, 'the cup is thine'; *nicht mein Becher, sondern deiner* or *der deine*, 'not my cup, but thine.'

b. But instead of the simple possessives, when used with the definite article, are very commonly substituted derived forms in *ig*: thus, *der meinige*, *die deinige*, *das Ihrige*, etc.

90. (161) Instead of the possessives, the German often uses the definite article, or a dative of the personal pronoun: thus, *er schüttelte den Kopf*, 'he shook his head,' *es fam mir in Sinn*, 'it came into my mind.'

VOCABULARY.

auch, *conj. or adv.* also, too.
das Bild, *=des, =der.* picture.
die Blume, *=men.* flower.

gebe, 1st. sing. give.
gibst, 2nd sing. givest.
der Hut, *=tes, =üte.* hat.

EXERCISE 9.

PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Ich gebe dem Kinde sein neues Kleid. 2. Gibst du ihm auch deinen Hut? 3. Sie haben meine schönen Blumen in der Hand. 4. Ich habe Ihr Bild, und ich gebe Ihnen das meinige. 5. Ihr Apfel ist gut; meiner ist schlecht. 6. Sein Kind ist schöner als das Ihrige. 7. Er und ich sind Brüder.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| am, 1st sing. bin. | handsome, schön. |
| art, 2d sing. bist. | have, 1st pl. haben. |
| friend, der Freund, -des, -de. | that, rel. pron. das. |
| give, 1st sing. gebe. | yes, ja. |
| give, 2d sing. gibst. | |

EXERCISE 10.

1. Do you give the child a book? 2. Yes, I give it to him. 3. Has she flowers in her (*art.*) hand? 4. She has my red flowers. 5. Thou art my friend, and I am thine. 6. Your picture is handsomer than his, but we have the handsomest picture. 7. It is my picture that (*das*) he has.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

91. (163) The demonstratives are *der*, *dieser*, 'this or that,' *jener*, 'yon, that.' They are used both adjectively and substantively.

92. (164) *Der* when used adjectively is declined precisely like the definite article (48: it is the same word); when used substantively, it has different forms in a part of its cases: thus,

| Singular. | | | Plural. |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. |
| N. der | die | das | die |
| G. dessen, (deß) | deren, (der) | dessen, (deß) | deren, (derer) |
| D. dem | der | dem | denen |
| A. den | die | das | die |

a. The abbreviated forms of the gen. sing. are rare. The gen. pl. *derer* is used when a limiting addition follows: thus, *derer, die mich lieben*, 'of those who love me.'

93. (165) *Dieser* and *jener* are always declined as adjectives of the first declension: thus, nom. *dieser*, *diese*, *dieses*, gen. *dieses*, *dieser*, *diese*, etc. *Dieses* as nom. or acc. neut. is often contracted to *dies* or *dieß*.

Dieser and *jener* sometimes mean 'the latter' and 'the former.'

94. (166) a. *Der* often takes the place of the pronoun of the third person used emphatically.

b. The neut. sing. *das* and *dies* are often used as indefinite subjects of verbs, meaning 'this, these, that, those'; the verb then agrees in number with the following predicate noun: thus, *das sind meine Brüder*, 'those are my brothers.'

c. In composition with prepositions, *da*, 'there,' and *hier*, 'here,' often take the place of cases of pronouns: thus, *damit*, 'therewith,' *hiermit*, 'herewith,' and so on.

95. (168) *Derjenige*, 'that, that one,' and *derselbe*, 'the same, he' are used in the manner of demonstratives, or almost of personal pronouns. *Derjenige* is especially used as antecedent to a relative: thus, *derjenige* (or *derjenige Mann*), *welcher geht*, 'he (or 'the man') who goes.' They are made up of the def. article and following adjective, and both parts are declined: thus, for example,

| | | <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|------------|------------------|------------|----------------|
| | <i>m.</i> | <i>f.</i> | <i>n.</i> | |
| N. | derjenige | diejenige | dasjenige | diejenigen |
| G. | desjenigen | derjenigen | desjenigen | derjenigen |
| D. | demjenigen | derjenigen | demjenigen | denjenigen |
| A. | denjenigen | diejenige | dasjenige | diejenigen |

INTERROGATIVES.

96. (172) The interrogatives are *wer*, 'who,' *was*, 'what,' and *welcher*, 'what, which.'

97. (173) *a.* *Wer* and *was* have no plural. The one denotes persons, the other things. They are declined as follows:

| | | | | |
|----|-----------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------|
| N. | <i>wer</i> | 'who' | <i>was</i> | 'what' |
| G. | <i>wessen</i> , (weß) | 'whose' | <i>wessen</i> , (weß) | 'of what' |
| D. | <i>wem</i> | 'to whom' | — | |
| A. | <i>wen</i> | 'whom' | <i>was</i> | 'what' |

b. For the dative and accusative of *was* as governed by prepositions are substituted compounds with *wo*, 'where': thus, *womit*, 'wherewith, with what,' *wofür*, 'wherefore, for what.' Rarely, *mit was*, etc., are used.

98. (174) *Welcher* is declined like *dieser*. As an adjective, qualifying a noun expressed, it means either 'what' or 'which'; used absolutely, it is our 'which.' Thus, *welches Buch*, 'what (or which) book?' *welches von diesen Büchern*, 'which of these books?'

99. (175) *Was*, with the preposition *für*, 'for,' after it, is used in the sense of 'what kind of?' It

is then invariable, and the words to which it is prefixed have the same construction as if they stood alone: thus, *was für ein Buch?* 'what sort of a book?'; *was für Bröd?* 'what kind of bread?'

100. (176) *a.* All the interrogatives are used also as relatives.
b. *Was* stands often for *etwas*, 'something'; *welch* is familiarly used to signify 'some': thus, *noch was werth*, 'still worth something'; *geben Sie mir welche*, 'give me some.'
c. *Was* is used for *um was*, or *warum*, 'why.'

RELATIVES.

101. (177) The demonstrative *der*, and the interrogatives *wer*, *was*, *was für*, and *welcher* are used also as relatives.

102. (178) *Der* and *welcher* are the ordinary relatives following an antecedent. In the nom. and accus. they are used interchangeably. In the dative (except after prepositions) the cases of *der* are preferred; and in the genitive only *dessen* and *deren* are ever met with.

103. (179) *a.* *Wer* and *was*, *was für*, and *welcher* used adjectively, are properly compound relatives, or antecedent and relative combined.

Thus, *wer bei Nacht vorbeiführ*, *sah die Flammen*, 'he who (whoever) went by at night saw the flames.'

b. The demonstrative is often repeated for distinctness after the compound relative. Thus, *wer nicht vorwärts geht*, *der kommt zurück*, 'whoever does not advance, he falls back.'

c. After a neuter pronoun or adjective (especially a superlative) taken in a general sense, *was* is used instead of *das* or *welches*: thus, *Alles, was von dir mir kam*, 'all that came to me from thee'; *das Erste, was sie hörten*, 'the first thing which they heard.'

104. (180) For the dat. or accus. case of a relative governed by a preposition is usually substituted, when things and not persons are referred to, the compound of the preposition with an adverb. The compounds of *da* (*davon*, *daraus*, etc.) are sometimes so used, but those of *wo* (*wovon*, *woraus*, etc.) are preferred.

105. (181) A word agreeing with a relative is put in the third person, even when the antecedent is of the first or second person, unless the personal pronoun be repeated after the relative: Thus, *bist du es*, *der so zittert*, 'is it thou who art trembling thus?'; but, *bis du es*, *der du so zitterst*?

106. (183) The relative is never omitted in German: thus, *die Freunde*, *die ich liebe*, 'the friends I love.'

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

107. (185) *Man* ('one') is used as indefinite subject to a verb (like the French *on*, or our *one*, *they*): thus, *man sagt*, 'they say,' 'it is said.' If any case but a nominative is required, *einer* is used instead.

108. (186-7) *Jemand*, 'some one,' *Niemand*, 'no one,' are usually declined (in the singular only) as nouns of the first declension; but sometimes they take the endings *em* or *en* in the dative and *en* in the accusative. *Jedermann*, 'every one,' has only the genitive *Jedermanns*.

109. (188) *Etwas*, 'something,' and *nichts*, 'nothing,' are indeclinable substantives. A following

adjective or (with *etwas*) noun is in apposition: thus, *etwas Geld*, 'some money.'

110. (191) *Manch*, 'many a, many,' *solch*, 'such,' and *all*, 'all,' before other limiting words are often undeclined: thus, *solch ein Mann*, 'such a man,' *von all dem Glanze*, 'by all the splendor.'

111. (192) *Viel*, 'much,' and *wenig*, 'little,' are also undeclined, except after another limiting word; also in *ein wenig*, 'a little.' *Mehr*, 'more,' and *weniger*, 'less,' are nearly always unvaried.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>bin</i> , 1st sing. am. | <i>freundlich</i> , <i>adj.</i> friendly. |
| <i>etwas</i> , <i>pron.</i> something, some- what. | <i>man</i> , <i>pron.</i> one, people, they. |
| <i>der Freund</i> , = <i>des</i> , = <i>de</i> . friend. | <i>Niemand</i> , <i>pron.</i> no one. |
| | <i>was für</i> , what sort of. |

EXERCISE 11.

DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Diese Frau ist meine Mutter.
2. Wer ist der Vater jener Kinder?
3. Ich bin es.
4. Wer sind diese Knaben?
5. Das sind meine Brüder.
6. Ich bin der Freund dessen, der mir freundlich ist.
7. Diejenigen, die reich sind, sind nicht immer glücklich.
8. Welches Buch hat sie?
9. Sie hat das-jenige, das du ihr gibst.
10. Was für ein Bild haben Sie?
11. Ich habe das Bild Friedrichs des Großen.
12. Was gibt man dir?
13. Niemand gibt mir etwas Schönes.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <i>anything</i> , <i>etwas</i> . | <i>some</i> , <i>einige</i> , <i>pl.</i> |
| <i>no one</i> , <i>Niemand</i> . | <i>what sort of</i> , <i>was für</i> . |
| <i>nothing</i> , <i>nichts</i> . | <i>ugly</i> , <i>häßlich</i> . |

EXERCISE 12.

1. Who is my friend?
2. It is I.
3. Which book have you?
4. I have this [one], and you have that [one].
5. What sort of flowers has she in her hand?
6. Those are beautiful flowers; but I have some which¹ are³ ugly².
7. These are the books which my father¹ gives³ me².
8. No one is the friend of him who¹ is⁴ no one's² friend³.
9. Have you anything good?
10. I have nothing bad.

Note that after a relative the verb has to be put at the end of the clause, instead of after its subject. This order is indicated by the figures appended to some of the words in the exercise.

NUMERALS.

112. (197) The CARDINAL numerals are as follows:

| | | |
|-----------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. ein | 11. elf (eilf) | 21. ein und zwanzig |
| 2. zwei | 12. zwölf | 22. zwei und zwanzig |
| 3. drei | 13. dreizehn | 30. dreißig |
| 4. vier | 14. vierzehn | 40. vierzig |
| 5. fünf | 15. fünfzehn (funfzehn) | 50. fünfundfünfzig (funfzig) |
| 6. sechs | 16. sechzehn (sechszehn) | 60. sechzig (sechszig) |
| 7. sieben | 17. siebzehn (siebenzehn) | 70. siebzig (siebenzig) |
| 8. acht | 18. achtzehn | 80. achtzig |
| 9. neun | 19. neunzehn | 90. neunzig |
| 10. zehn | 20. zwanzig | 100. hundert |
| | 1000. tausend | 1,000,000. Million |

113. a. The odd numbers, between twenty and a hundred, are formed always by prefixing the name of the unit to that of the ten, with *und*, 'and,' interposed: thus, *drei und zwanzig*, 'three and twenty' (not *zwanzig-drei*, 'twenty-three').

b. The higher numbers, *hundert*, *tausend*, *million*, are multiplied by prefixed numbers, as in English: thus, *sechs hundert*,

600; drei und achtzig tausend, 83,000. The German says eine Million, 'a million,' as we do; but simply hundert, 'a hundred,' tausend, 'a thousand'; ein hundert, ein tausend, mean 'one hundred,' 'one thousand.'

114. (198-9) *a.* Ein, 'one,' is fully inflected. When used adjectively, it is declined like the indefinite article (48); when standing for a noun, like an adjective of the first declension: thus, einer von euch, 'one of you' (but eines in nom. and accus. neut. is usually contracted to eins); when preceded by a limiting word (usually der), it is declined like an adjective in that position: thus, der eine sprach, 'the one spoke.' It is uninflected in the compound numbers, ein und zwanzig, etc.

b. Zwei and drei have gen. and dat. plur. forms — zweier, zweien; dreier, dreien — sometimes used for distinctness.

c. The other numerals are, with rare exceptions, uninflected.

d. Beide is often used for 'two': thus, meine beiden Brüder, 'my two brothers.'

115. (211) *a.* After a numeral, a noun expressing measurement (unless it be a feminine noun in e) usually has the singular form: thus, acht Fuß lang, 'eight feet long,' zehn Fäss, 'ten casks,' zehn tausend Mann stark, '10,000 men strong'; zwanzig Mark, 'twenty marks'; but fünf Meilen weit, 'five miles distant.'

b. (216) And the following noun, expressing the ~~thing~~ measured, is usually left unvaried (as if in apposition with the other), unless preceded by an article or other limiting word: thus, zehn Fäss Bier, 'ten casks of beer,' zwei Pfund Thee, 'two pounds of tea,' drei Ellen Tuch, 'three yards of cloth'; but, ein Glas dieses Weins, 'a glass of this wine,' zwei Pfund guten Thees, 'two pounds of good tea.'

c. The same rules are followed after indefinite numerals: thus, einige Fuß, 'some feet,' wie viel Pfund? 'how many pounds?'

d. The time of day is expressed by Uhr, 'hour,' which is not varied: thus, ein Uhr, 'one o'clock,' zehn Uhr, 'ten o'clock.' For

the half-hour, *halb*, 'half,' is prefixed to the next higher number: thus, *halb sechs*, 'half past five.' The quarters are generally counted with *auf*, 'toward,' and the following hour: thus, *ein Viertel auf drei*, 'quarter past two,' *drei Viertel auf sieben*, 'quarter before seven.'

116. (203) *a.* The ORDINAL numerals are adjectives, formed from the cardinals by the suffixes *t* and *st*: from the numbers 2-19, by adding *t*; from the higher numbers, by adding *st*; they are declined like other adjectives. Thus: *der zweite*, 'the second,' *die neunte*, 'the ninth,' *das sechzehnte*, 'the sixteenth,' *der zwanzigste*, 'the twentieth,' *die hundertste*, 'the hundredth,' *das tausendste*, 'the thousandth.'

b. But the ordinal of *ein* is *erst*, 'first'; *drei* forms irregularly *dritt*; and *acht*, *acht* (instead of *acht*); *ander*, 'other,' is sometimes used instead of *zweit*, 'second.'

c. Compound numbers add, as in English, the ordinal ending only to their last member: thus, *der zwei und zwanzigste*, 22d, *der hundert und erste*, 101st, *im achtzehn hundert fünf und achtzigsten Jahre*, 'in the 1885th year.'

117. (207) *a.* For 'one and a half' is generally used *anderthalb*; for 'two and a half,' *dritthalb*—and so on, adding *halb* to the next higher ordinal.

b. The name of a month is unvaried after an ordinal: thus, *den neunten Mai*, 'the ninth of May.'

VOCABULARY.

Berlin. Berlin.

die Flasche, -schen. bottle.

das Bier, -rs. beer.

das Glas, -ses, -äser. glass.

das Fass, -ses, -ässer. barrel, vat.

das Jahr, -res, -re. year.

der Februar, -rs. February.

jung, adj. young.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| kostet, <i>3d sing.</i> costs. | die Uhr, <i>=ren.</i> hour, o'clock. |
| die Mark, <i>=fen.</i> mark. | um, <i>prep.</i> by. |
| der November. November. | der Viertel, <i>=ls., =l.</i> quarter. |
| nur, <i>adv.</i> only. | das Wasser, <i>=rs.</i> water. |
| oder, <i>conj.</i> or. | der Wein, <i>=ns., =ne.</i> wine. |
| der Tag, <i>=ges., =ge.</i> day. | |

EXERCISE 13.

NUMERALS.

1. Berlin, den 4ten November 1884.
2. Es ist sechs Uhr.
3. Es ist drei Viertel auf neun Uhr.
4. Das Jahr hat zwölf Monate oder 365 Tage.
5. Ein Monat hat 30 oder 31 Tage; aber der 2te Monat, Februar, hat nur 28 Tage.
6. Mein jüngster Bruder ist 21 Jahre alt; der älteste ist älter um ('by') 7 Jahre und 9 Monate; der zweite ist in seinem 25ten Jahre.
7. Er hat drei Flaschen Wein, fünf Fäß Bier, und nur zwei Glas Wasser.
8. Dieser Wein kostet ('costs') drei Mark die Flasche.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| bottle, Flasche. | or, oder. |
| broad, breit. | pound, das Pfund, <i>=des, =de.</i> |
| cloth, das Tuch, <i>=ches, =ücher.</i> | row, die Reihe, <i>=hen.</i> |
| foot, der Fuß, <i>=hes, =üße.</i> | sugar, der Zucker, <i>=rs.</i> |
| long, lang. | sweet, füß. |
| o'clock, Uhr. | yard, die Elle, <i>=len.</i> |
| only, nur. | wine, Wein. |

EXERCISE 14.

13. 27. 56. 83. 119. 472. 1071. 1492.

1. In my garden are 63 trees, in 3 long rows; in the first row are 15 trees, in the second are 21, and in the third are 27.
2. My second sister is 16 years old.
3. My house is 40 feet long, and 25 broad.
4. I have ten pounds of sugar and six yards of good cloth.
- 5.

The merchant has 22 bottles of wine, but only 7 bottles of the sweet wine. 6. It is 10 o'clock, or half past ten.

CONJUGATION.

VERBS.

118. (235) The simple forms of the verb are (as in English): two tenses, PRESENT and PRETERIT, each having two modes, INDICATIVE and SUBJUNCTIVE; an IMPERATIVE (in only the second pers., sing. and pl.); an INFINITIVE; and two PARTICIPLES, present and past (the latter usually passive). All the rest of the conjugation is made with auxiliary verbs.

119. (237) The PRINCIPAL PARTS (from which the others may be made) are: the infinitive, the preterit indicative (1st sing.), and the past participle: thus, lieben, liebte, geliebt; geben, gab, gegeben.

120. (246) Verbs are divided into two conjugations, according to the way in which they make their preterit and participle.

a. Verbs of the OLD (or "strong") CONJUGATION form the preterit by a change of vowel (without added ending), and the participle by the ending *en* (with or without change of vowel): thus, geben, gab, gegeben; singen, sang, gesungen; fliegen, flog, geflogen.

b. Verbs of the NEW (or "weak") CONJUGATION form the preterit in *te* (or *ete*), and the participle in *t* (or *et*): thus, lieben, liebte, geliebt; reden, redete, geredet.

c. The past participle, in both conjugations, has usually the prefix *ge*.

121. (237) The personal endings are the same in both conjugations: *st* (or *est*) in 2d sing., *t* (or *et*) in 3d sing. *cf* pres. indic. only; *en* (or *n*) in 1st and 3d pl., *t* (or *et*) in 2d pl. The presence or absence of *e* in the endings depends chiefly on ease of pronunciation; but it is usually retained in the subjunctive. The infinitive ends always in *n* (usually *en*); the present participle, in *nd* (or *end*: made by adding *d* to the infinitive). The infinitive often takes the sign *zu*, 'to.' The 1st and 3d sing. subj. always end in *e*; and in the Old conjugation (only exceptionally in the New), the vowel of the preterit is modified in the pret. subjunctive.

a. The inflection of the tenses is always regular, except in the 2d and 2d sing. of the pres. indicative, which in many verbs show peculiarities; and those peculiarities are sometimes shared also by the 2d sing. imper.

122. (239) The AUXILIARY VERBS used in making the compound tenses and the passive voice of other verbs are three: *haben*, 'have'; *sein*, 'be'; and *werden*, 'become.' They are conjugated as follows in their own simple forms:

a. *Haben*:—principal parts, *haben*, *hatte*, *gehabt*

INDICATIVE.

| <i>Singular.</i> | |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1 ich habe | 'I have' |
| 2 du hast | 'thou hast' |
| 3 er hat | 'he has' |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

| <i>Singular.</i> | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| ich habe | 'I may have' |
| du habest | 'thou mayest have' |
| er habe | 'he may have' |

Plural.

| <i>Plural.</i> | |
|----------------|-------------|
| wir haben | 'we have' |
| ihr habet | 'ye have' |
| sie haben | 'they have' |

Plural.

| <i>Plural.</i> | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| wir haben | 'we may have' |
| ihr habet | 'ye may have' |
| sie haben | 'they may have' |

*Preterit.**Singular.*

1 ich hatte 'I had' ich hätte 'I might have'

2 du hattest 'thou hadst' du hattest 'thou mightest have'

3 er hatte 'he had' er hätte 'he might have'

*Singular.**Plural.*

1 wir hatten 'we had' wir hätten 'we might have'

2 ihr hattet 'ye had' ihr hättet 'ye might have'

3 sie hatten 'they had' sie hätten 'they might have'

Plural.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular

2 habe (du) 'have thou'

Plural.

habt (ihr) 'have ye'

INFINITIVE.

haben 'to have'

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

habend 'having'

Past.

gehabt 'had'

b. (325, 329) Note that the German does not make in any verb such distinctions as 'I have, I do have, I am having,' 'I had, I did have, I was having,' etc.; all are alike expressed by *ich habe*, *ich hatte*. The subjunctive is sometimes to be rendered in English also by other auxiliaries than 'may' and 'might,' and sometimes by our indicative (see 191-2).

c. *Sein*:—principal parts, *sein*, *war*, *gewesen*.

INDICATIVE.

| <i>Present,</i> | <i>Preterit.</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|
| ich bin | ich war |
| du bist | du warst |
| er ist | er war |
| wir sind | wir waren |
| ihr seid | ihr wart |
| sie sind | sie waren |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Preterit.</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|
| ich sei | ich wäre |
| du seiest | du wärest |
| er sei | er wäre |
| wir seien | wir wären |
| ihr seiet | ihr wäret |
| sie seien | sie wären |

IMPERATIVE.

sei seid

INFINITIVE.

sein

PARTICIPLES.

Present,

seiend

Past.

gewesen

d. Werden:—principal parts, werden, ward or wurde, geworden.

INDICATIVE.

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>Present,</i> | <i>Preterit.</i> |
| ich werde | ich ward, wurde |
| du wirst | du wardst, wurdest |
| er wird | er ward, wurde |
| wir werden | wir wurden |
| ihr werdet | ihr wurdet |
| sie werden | sie wurden |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>Present,</i> | <i>Preterit.</i> |
| ich werde | ich würde |
| du werdest | du würdest |
| er werde | er würde |
| wir werden | wir würden |
| ihr werdet | ihr würdet |
| sie werden | sie würden |

IMPERATIVE.

werde werdet

INFINITIVE.

werden

PARTICIPLES.

werdend geworden

123. (237.8) Note that in these, as in all other verbs, the 3d pl., with its pronoun *sie* written with a capital, is used also in the sense of a 2d pers., sing. or pl. (85): thus, *Sie haben*, 'you have,' *Sie würden*, 'you might become,' etc.

124. (243) The lacking imperative persons are supplied from the pres. subjunctive: thus, *habe er*, 'let him have,' *haben wir*, 'let us have,' *haben sie*, 'let them have' (and *haben Sie*, 'do you have'); and so in other verbs.

125. Arrangement. *a.* The personal verb immediately follows its subject ; all its modifiers, as object, adverb, and so on, must come after it : thus, *ich wurde dann frank*, 'I then became ill.'

b. But the subject itself is also placed after the verb (and next to it) in asking a question, and also sometimes to give the sense of 'if': thus, *habe ich*, 'if I have,' *hätte ich*, 'if I had,' or 'had I.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>besser</i> , <i>adj. or adv.</i> better. | <i>frank</i> , <i>adj.</i> sick, ill. |
| <i>hier</i> , <i>adv.</i> here. | <i>leer</i> , <i>adj.</i> empty. |
| <i>jeder</i> , <i>pron.</i> each, every. | <i>wo</i> , <i>adv. or conj.</i> where. |
| <i>jetzt</i> , <i>adv.</i> now. | <i>zufrieden</i> , <i>adj.</i> contented. |

EXERCISE 15.

SIMPLE FORMS OF THE AUXILIARIES.

1. Was *hattest* du? 2. *Ich hatte* eine Flasche Wein, aber die Flasche *ist jetzt leer*. 3. *Waren* Sie im Gebirge? 4. *Ja*, wir *waren* fünf Tage im Gebirge. 5. *Mein Sohn ist frank*, aber er *wird besser*. 6. *Wo sind* Sie? und *wo waren* sie als sie hier *war*? 7. *Seine kleinen Kinder werden* jeden Tag *größer*. 8. *Sei gut* und du *wirst* glücklich. 9. *Ich wäre zufrieden*, *hätte ich ein gutes Buch*.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <i>better</i> , <i>besser</i> . | <i>sick</i> , <i>frank</i> . |
| <i>piece</i> , <i>das Stück</i> , <i>-tes</i> , <i>-te</i> . | <i>small</i> , <i>klein</i> . |

EXERCISE 16.

1. *I am* ; *he may be* ; *we might become* ; *ye were* ; *they become* ; *she might have* ; *thou mightest have* ; *it might be*. 2. *Are you?* *was she?* *might he be?* *dost thou become?* *did you have?* *have they?* 3. *May he have* ; *may we be* ; *might she have* ; *may they become* ; *might we have*. 4. *Let him be* ; *let us*

become ; do you become ; let them have ; let her become. 5. I had daughters, and they had sons. 6. We had a son, but he was sick, and did not become better. 7. Be ye good and true. 8. The child was small, but it was becoming larger. 9. This man had a piece [of] bread, and we had some wine.

126. (240) *Compound Forms.* From the auxiliaries *haben* and *sein*, with the past participle of any verb, are made for that verb perfect and pluperfect tenses, indicative and subjunctive, and a perfect infinitive, in the same manner as in English: thus, *ich habe gehabt*, 'I have had,' *ich hatte gehabt*, 'I had had'; *ich habe gehabt*, 'I may have had,' *ich hätte gehabt*, 'I might have had'; *gehabt haben*, 'to have had';—and so *ich bin gewesen*, *ich war gewesen*, *ich sei gewesen*, *ich wäre gewesen*; *gewesen sein*; 'I have been,' etc.

127. (241) Most verbs (including all transitives, reflexives, and impersonals) take *haben* as auxiliary; but *sein* is taken instead by a number of intransitives, as *sein*, *werden*, *gehen*, *kommen*, *fallen*, *bleiben*, *begegnen*, *folgen*, and especially by such as signify a change of condition or a movement of transition.

128. (240) *a.* From the auxiliary *werden*, with the infinitives, present and perfect, are made (from the pres. indic. and subj.) a future and future perfect, indicative and subjunctive, and (from the pret. subj.) a conditional and conditional perfect: thus, *ich werde haben*, 'I shall have,' *ich*

werde gehabt haben, 'I shall have had' (the subjunctives are the same in the 1st pers.); ich würde haben, 'I should have,' ich würde gehabt haben, 'I should have had';—and so ich werde sein, ich werde gewesen sein; ich würde sein, ich würde gewesen sein.

b. The passive is also made with werden: see below, 149.

c. Note that, in the compound forms containing both an infinitive and a participle, the participle comes before the infinitive, by an arrangement the reverse of that in English.

NEW CONJUGATION.

129. (247) a. Below is given the complete inflection of a verb of the New conjugation, lieben, 'love,' taking haben as auxiliary.

Principal parts:—lieben, liebte, geliebt.

INDICATIVE.

| Present, | Preterit, | Present, | Preterit, |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 'I love,' etc. | 'I loved,' etc. | 'I may love,' etc. | 'I might love,' etc. |
| 1 ich liebe | liebte | liebe | liebete (liebte, &c.) |
| 2 du liebst | liebstest | liebest | liebetest |
| 3 er liebt | liebte | liebe | liebete |
| 1 wir lieben | liebten | lieben | liebeten |
| 2 ihr liebt | liebtet | liebet | liebetet |
| 3 sie lieben | liebten | lieben | liebeten |

Perfect, 'I have loved,' etc.

| | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1 ich habe geliebt | habe geliebt |
| 2 du hast geliebt | habest geliebt |
| 3 er hat geliebt | habe geliebt |
| 1 wir haben geliebt | haben geliebt |
| 2 ihr habt geliebt | habet geliebt |
| 3 sie haben geliebt | haben geliebt |

IMPERATIVE, 'love,' etc.

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 | lieben wir |
| 2 liebe (liebe du) | liebt (liebt ihr) |
| 3 liebe er | lieben sie |

INFINITIVE, 'love (to love)' etc.

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Present, | Perfect. |
| lieben (zu lieben) | geliebt haben (geliebt zu haben) |

PARTICIPLES, 'loving, loved.'

| | |
|----------|------------------|
| Present, | Past or Passive. |
| liebend | geliebt |

b. Further, the conjugation (only the synopsis of the compound tenses) of a verb taking *sein* as auxiliary, namely *wandern*, 'wander.'

Verbs ending in the infin. in *eln* and *ern* usually drop the *e* of the personal ending; or, if that be retained, the *e* of the final syllable of the root.

Principal parts:—*wandern*, *wanderte*, *gewandert*.

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Present. | |
| ich wandere (wandre) | wandere (wandre) |
| du wanderst | wanderest (wandrest) |
| er wandert | wandere (wandre) |
| wir wandern | wanderen (wandren) |
| ihr wandert | wanderet (wandret) |
| sie wandern | wanderen (wandren) |
| Preterit. | |
| ich wanderte | wanderte |
| du wandertest | wanderest |
| er wanderte | wanderte |
| wir wanderten | wanderten |
| ihr wandertet | wandertet |
| sie wanderten | wanderten |

Perfect.

ich bin gewandert, *rc.* sei gewandert, *rc.*

Pluperfect.

ich war gewandert, *rc.* wäre gewandert, *rc.*

Future.

ich werde wandern, *rc.* werde wandern, *rc.*

Future Perfect.

ich werde gewandert sein, *rc.* werde gewandert sein, *rc.*

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde wandern, *rc.*

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

würde gewandert sein, *rc.*

IMPERATIVES.

wandere (wandre)

INFINITIVE.

Present,

wandern

Perfect.

gewandert sein

PARTICIPLES.

Present,

wandernd

Past.

gewandert

130. (243) Verbs of the New conjugation ending in the infin. in *iren* or *ieren* do not take the prefix *ge* in the participle: thus, *studiren*, *studirt*; *regieren*, *regiert*.

131. (249) A few verbs of this conjugation ending in *ennen* or *enden* change the radical vowel *e* to *a* in the pret. ind. and the past pple.: thus, *fennen*, *fannte* (subj. *fennte*), *gefannt*; *senden*, *sendte* (subj. *sendete*), *gesandt*, etc.

132. (250) *Bringen*, 'bring,' and *denken*, 'think,' have the princ. parts *bringen*, *brachte* (subj. *brächte*), *gebracht*; *denken*, *dachte* (subj. *dächte*), *gedacht*.

For the modal auxiliaries of mixed conjugation, see below, 142.

133. *Arrangement.* a. In forming a sentence that contains a compound tense, the impersonal part of the verb, the participle or infinitive (or both: and, in this case, with the participle

before the infinitive), is put at the end of the whole sentence, after the other qualifiers of the predicate—as object, adverb, predicate noun or adjective, etc.: thus, *ich habe ihn geliebt*, 'I have loved him,' *sie werden uns nie recht lieben*, 'they will never really love us,' *wir würden nicht so weit von hier gewandert sein*, 'we should not have wandered so far from here.'

b. But after a relative, or a subordinating conjunction (180)—as 'if,' 'because,' 'when,' 'while,' 'that'—the personal part of the verb, or the auxiliary, is transposed to the very end of the clause, and put after participle and infinitive: thus, *wenn ich ihn geliebt habe*, 'if I have loved him,' *weil sie uns nie recht lieben werden*, 'because they will never really love us,' *dass wir nicht so weit von hier gewandert sein würden*, 'that we should not have wandered so far from here.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| arbeiten, <i>v.</i> work. | lieben, <i>v.</i> love. |
| bei, <i>prep.</i> by, with. | loben, <i>v.</i> praise. |
| der Brief, <i>=fes, fe.</i> letter. | mehr, <i>adv.</i> more. |
| bringen, <i>v.</i> bring, carry. | nach, <i>prep.</i> after, to. |
| dort, <i>adv.</i> there, yonder. | recht, <i>adv.</i> really, very. |
| fortan, <i>adv.</i> henceforth. | reisen, <i>v.</i> travel, journey. |
| jedermann, every man, every one. | schwach, <i>adj.</i> weak, feeble. |
| kaufen, <i>v.</i> buy. | sorgen, <i>v.</i> care, take care. |
| kennen, <i>v.</i> know, be acquainted with. | studiren, <i>v.</i> study. |
| lang, <i>adj.</i> long. | viel, <i>adj.</i> much, many. |
| leben, <i>v.</i> live. | weil, <i>conj.</i> because, since. |
| | wenn, <i>conj.</i> when, if. |
| | wohnen, <i>v.</i> dwell. |

EXERCISE 17.

VERBS OF THE NEW CONJUGATION.

1. *Wen liebst du?* 2. *Ich liebe jedermann, der mich liebt.*
3. *Wo ist dein Bruder gewesen?* 4. *Er ist nach Paris gereist, und hat mir ein neues Kleid gekauft.* 5. *Ich habe meinem Freunde einen langen Brief geschickt.* 6. *Der Mann hat in jenem Hause gewohnt, aber er wird fortan bei seinen Kindern*

leben. 7. Er wird nicht mehr arbeiten, weil er so alt und schwach geworden ist. 8. Seine Kinder lieben ihn, und werden für ihn sorgen. 9. Loben wir ihn und sie. 10. Meine Kinder würden für mich gesorgt haben, wenn ich alt gewesen wäre. 11. Das Mädchen, das er recht gut kannte, hatte ihm viele schöne Blumen gebracht. 12. Er ist nach Berlin gereist, und wird dort studiren.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| because, <i>weil</i> . | now, <i>adv.</i> jetzt. |
| bring, <i>v.</i> bringen. | often, <i>adv.</i> oft. |
| buy, <i>v.</i> kaufen. | Paris, <i>Paris</i> . |
| dress, <i>das Kleid, -des, -der</i> . | praise, <i>v.</i> loben. |
| enough, <i>adv.</i> genug. | say, <i>v.</i> sagen. |
| follow, <i>v.</i> folgen. | that, <i>conj.</i> daß. |
| henceforth, <i>adv.</i> fortan. | there, <i>adv.</i> da, dort. |
| journey, <i>v.</i> reisen. | travel, <i>v.</i> reisen. |
| live, <i>v.</i> leben. | Tuesday, <i>der Dienstag, -gß, -ge</i> . |
| love, <i>v.</i> lieben. | very, <i>adv.</i> sehr. |
| money, <i>das Geld, -des, -der</i> . | wandern, <i>v.</i> wandern. |
| new, <i>adj.</i> neu. | work, <i>v.</i> arbeiten. |

EXERCISE 18.

1. I love ; we have loved ; he will love ; you would have loved. 2. Had he lived ? should you live ? do they live ? 3. If he has praised ; because we had praised ; that thou wouldest have praised. 4. She has traveled ; would you have wandered ? that they will have followed. 5. We have loved our friends, because they have loved us. 6. Let us always love the good, the beautiful, and the true. 7. She has been very rich, but she is now poor. 8. I shall work for her, and she will become happy. 9. We have lived in Berlin, but we shall live henceforth in Paris. 10. She journeyed on Tuesday to the city, and is bringing me

a new dress, which she has bought there. 11. She would have bought two dresses, if she had had money enough. 12. She has often said to me that she loves me.

OLD CONJUGATION.

134. (262) In verbs of the Old conjugation, the radical vowel always differs in the preterit from the present (and infinitive); in the participle it sometimes agrees with the present, and sometimes with the preterit, but it sometimes differs from both.

135. (264-7) Of those having a different vowel in each of the prin. parts, the most important classes are those having

a. i-a-u (or o): thus, *singen*, *sang*, *gesungen*, 'sing'; (*spinnen*, *spann*, *gesponnen*, 'spin.')

b. e-a-o: thus, *brechen*, *brach*, *gebrochen*, 'break.'

Of those having the same vowel in infin. and participle, the most important have

c. e-a-e: thus, *geben*, *gab*, *gegeben*, 'give.'

d. a-u-a: thus, *schlagen*, *schlug*, *geschlagen*, 'slay.'

e. a-ie, i-a: thus, *fallen*, *fiel*, *gefallen*, 'fall.'

Of those having the same vowel in pret. and participle, the most important have

f. ei-i, ie-i, ie: thus, *beißen*, *biss*, *gebissen*, 'bite'; *treiben*, *trieb*, *getrieben*, 'drive.'

g. ie (or au, ü)-o-o: thus, *fliegen*, *flog*, *geflogen*, 'fly.'

Besides these, there are a number of minor classes and irregular cases. All the verbs of this conjugation have their forms given in the list of Irregular Verbs at the end of the book (p. 120 ff.)

136. (268) a. In the present indic., 2d and 3d singular, a radical e is usually changed to i if short, and to ie if long, and a radical a is modified (to ä): thus, *spreche*, *sprichst*, *spricht*; *sehe*, *sehst*, *sieht*; *trage*, *trägst*, *trägt*.

b. The same change of *e* (not of *ä*) is made in the 2d sing. imperative, and the ending *e* is in such cases almost always omitted: thus, *sprich*, *sieh* (but *trage*).

c. Some verbs omit or take these changes irregularly: *e.g.* *geht*, *steht*, etc.; *nimmt* (from *nehmen*), *tritt* (from *treten*), *giebt* or *gibt* (from *geben*).

d. After these altered vowels, the 2d pers. ending is *st* (not *est*), except after a sibilant (and sometimes even there), and the 3d pers. ending is *t* (not *et*); and, after final *t* or *th* of a root, this *t*, not being heard, is also not written: thus, *gelse*, *giltst*, *gilt*; *räthe*, *räthst*, *räth*.

e. For other irregularities, see the List of Irregular Verbs.

137. (269) a. In the preterit, the final consonant not infrequently shows irregularities: *e.g.* *schraf* from *schrefen*, *fiel* from *fallen*, *fam* from *kommen*; *ritt* from *reiten*, *litt* from *leiden*; *zog* from *ziehen*; *ging* from *gehen*, *stand* from *stehen*, *that* from *thun*.

b. Some verbs have a double form in the preterit, one form being in most cases the usual one, the other archaic or provincial. Ordinarily, then, a subjunctive is made from each one of these two forms.

c. The pret. subj. is regularly formed from the indic. by adding *e* (in 1st pers.) and modifying the vowel if possible: thus, *sang*, *sänge*; *fam*, *fäme*; *zog*, *zöge*; *schlug*, *schlüge*.

138. (271) The ending of the participle is *en* (rarely *n* only).

As regards the final consonant of the root, the participle shares in part in the irregularities of the preterit. *Essen*, 'eat,' has *gegessen*.

139. (236) a. As example of the complete inflection of a verb of the Old conjugation having *habeu* as auxiliary may be taken *geben*, 'give.'

Only the simple forms will be given in full; the compound tenses are inflected precisely like the corresponding ones of *lieben* (129).

Principal parts:—*geben, gab, gegeben.*

| INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | | | |
|---|------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Preterit.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Preterit.</i> | | |
| ich gebe | gab | gebe | gäbe | | |
| du giebst (gibst) | gabst | gebest | gäbest | | |
| er giebt (gibt) | gab | gebe | gäbe | | |
| wir geben | gaben | geben | gäben | | |
| ihr gebt | gabt | gebet | gäbet | | |
| sie geben | gaben | geben | gäben | | |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | | <i>habe gegeben etc.</i> | | | |
| ich habe gegeben etc. | | | | | |
| ich hatte gegeben etc. | | <i>hätte gegeben etc.</i> | | | |
| ich werde geben etc. | | <i>werde geben etc.</i> | | | |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | | <i>werde gegeben haben etc.</i> | | | |
| ich werde gegeben haben etc. | | | | | |
| <i>CONDITIONAL.</i> | | <i>CONDITIONAL PERFECT.</i> | | | |
| ich würde geben etc. | | <i>würde gegeben haben etc.</i> | | | |
| <i>IMPERATIVE.</i> | | | | | |
| gib or gieb (du) | | <i>gebt (ihr)</i> | | | |
| <i>INFINITIVE.</i> | | | | | |
| <i>Present.</i> | | <i>Perfect.</i> | | | |
| (zu) geben | | <i>gegeben (zu) haben</i> | | | |
| <i>PARTICIPLES.</i> | | | | | |
| <i>Present.</i> | | <i>Past or Passive.</i> | | | |
| gebend | | <i>gegeben</i> | | | |
| <i>b. An example of verbs having <i>sein</i> as auxiliary is <i>kommen</i>, 'come.'</i> Only the synopsis is given. | | | | | |
| <i>kommen, kam, gekommen.</i> | | | | | |
| komme | | <i>komme</i> | | | |
| kam | | <i>käme</i> | | | |
| bin gekommen | | <i>sei gekommen</i> | | | |

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| war gekommen | wäre gekommen |
| werde kommen | werde kommen |
| werde gekommen sein | werde gekommen sein |
| | würde kommen |
| | würde gekommen sein |
| | komme (komu) |
| kommen | gekommen sein |
| kommend | gekommen |

140. *Arrangement.* a. In the regular order of the sentence, only the general connectives meaning 'and' 'but' 'for' 'or' (178) are allowed to stand along with the subject before the verb.

b. But a member of the predicate of any kind may be put, for emphasis or euphony, at the head of the sentence, with the further effect to invert the order of the sentence, putting the subject next after instead of next before the personal verb: thus, instead of *ich habe ihn oft in Berlin gesehen*, 'I have seen him often in Berlin,' one may say, *ihn habe ich oft in Berlin gesehen*, *oft habe ich ihn in Berlin gesehen*, *in Berlin habe ich ihn oft gesehen*, and even *gesehen habe ich ihn oft in Berlin*.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| ander, <i>adj.</i> other, else. | mit, <i>prep.</i> with. |
| bleiben, <i>v. O.</i> remain. | nie, <i>adv.</i> never. |
| duftig, <i>adj.</i> fragrant. | rufen, <i>v. O.</i> call. |
| fallen, <i>v. O.</i> fall. | schlagen, <i>v. O.</i> strike. |
| finden, <i>v. O.</i> find. | schreiben, <i>v. O.</i> write. |
| fliegen, <i>v. O.</i> fly. | sehen, <i>v. O.</i> look. |
| geben, <i>v. O.</i> give. | singen, <i>v. O.</i> sing. |
| das Geschenk, =fes, =fe. gift. | suchen, <i>v. N.</i> seek. |
| heute, <i>adv.</i> to-day. | über, <i>prep.</i> over, above, higher than. |
| hoch, <i>adj.</i> high. | der Vogel, =l8, =ögel. bird. |
| kommen, <i>v. O.</i> come. | warum, <i>adv. or conj.</i> why, wherefore. |
| laufen, <i>v. O.</i> run. | das Zimmer, =r8, =r. room. |
| das Lied, =des, =der. song. | |
| das Liedchen, =ns, =n. little song. | |

EXERCISE 19.

VERBS OF THE OLD CONJUGATION.

1. Meine Schwester ist gekommen, und hat mir ein schönes Geschenk gegeben. 2. Der schlechte Knabe schlug seinen kleinen Bruder mit einem großen Stock. 3. Die Vögel fliegen hoch über der Erde und fallen nicht. 4. Die Menschen würden fallen, wenn sie flögen. 5. Warum läuft dieser Mann? 6. Er sucht etwas, aber er wird es nicht finden. 7. Heute habe ich Ihre Schwestern nicht gesehen; wo sind sie? 8. Sie sind in ihrem Zimmer geblieben; die eine schreibt einen Brief, und die andere singt ein Lied. 9. Singen Sie mir ein schönes Liedchen. 10. Ich komme, weil du mich gerufen hast. 11. Dich habe ich nicht gerufen. 12. Dem artigen Mädchen gab er duftige Blumen. 13. Unartigen Kindern werden wir nie etwas geben. 14. Wärest du artiger, so gäbe ich dir etwas Schönes.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| apple, der Apfel, -ls, Äpfel. | present, Geschenk. |
| another, ein ander. | see, v. sehen. |
| bite, v. beißen, O. | sing, v. singen. |
| break, v. brechen, O. | song, Lied. |
| church, die Kirche, -en. | speak, v. sprechen, O. |
| come, v. kommen. | strike, v. schlagen. |
| dog, der Hund, -des, -de. | take, v. nehmen, O. |
| fall, v. fallen. | then, adv. dann. |
| give, v. geben. | to-day, adv. heute. |
| hear, v. hören, N. | write, v. schreiben. |
| louder, adv. höher. | yesterday, adv. gestern. |
| never, adv. nie. | |

EXERCISE 20.

1. I give; givest thou? he has given; we would give. 2. He falls; they fell; that he may fall; you

had fallen. 3. Break ; hast thou broken ? we shall break ; they broke ; that they might break. 4. Speak louder, and we shall hear better. 5. See ! what is he doing there ? 6. The dog bit the boy, because the boy had struck him. 7. If the boy strikes the dog, then (so) he will bite him. 8. The man had come and had given me the letter which my friend wrote to me. 9. Let us sing this little song. 10. Now we shall sing another song, which you have never seen. 11. To thee I give this apple ; come and take it. 12. If the child were better, (then, so) I should give it a more beautiful present. 13. Yesterday we saw him in the church, but to-day he was not there. 14. There I have often seen him.

MIXED CONJUGATION.

141. (272) Some verbs make a part of their forms according to the New and a part according to the Old conjugation, or have alternative forms of either. For these, see the list of Irregular Verbs (p. 133).

142. (251) *Modal Auxiliaries.* These are *dürfen*, 'be allowed,' *können*, 'can, be able,' *mögen*, 'like, choose' (rarely 'may'), *müssen*, 'must, be obliged, have to,' *sollen*, 'shall, be to,' *wollen*, 'will, be willing, wish.' They have a mixed inflection, their present being like a preterit of the Old conjugation, but the rest being of the New. They are conjugated in full, only lacking (except *wollen*) an imperative.

a. These verbs are used along with the infinitives of other verbs, impressing upon them modifications of meaning analogous with those expressed by the forms of conjugation of some languages.

b. Their simple forms are as follows :

Indicative Present.

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| S. 1 | darf | kann | mag | muß | soll | will |
| 2 | darfst | kannst | magst | mußt | sollst | willst |
| 3 | darf | kann | mag | muß | soll | will |
| P. 1 | dürfen | können | mögen | müssen | sollen | wollen |
| 2 | dürfst | könnt | mögt | müßt | sollt | wollt |
| 3 | dürfen | können | mögen | müssen | sollen | wollen |

Indicative Preterit.

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|
| S. 1 | durfte | könnte | mochte | mußte | sollte | wollte |
| | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. |

Subjunctive Present.

| | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| S. 1 | dürfe | könne | möge | müsse | solle | wolle |
| | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. |

Subjunctive Preterit.

| | | | | | | |
|------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|
| S. 1 | dürfte | könnte | möchte | mußte | sollte | wollte |
| | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. |

Imperative.

| | | | | | | |
|------|--|--|--|--|-------|--|
| S. 2 | | | | | wolle | |
| P. 2 | | | | | wollt | |

Participles.

| | | | | | |
|----------|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| dürfend | könnend | mögend | müßend | sollend | wollend |
| gedurfst | gekonnt | gemocht | gemußt | gesollt | gewollt |

Infinitive.

| | | | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| dürfen | können | mögen | müssen | sollen | wollen |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|

143. a. The compound tenses are made like those of other verbs, with the important exception that in the perfect and pluperfect tenses, when used along with the infinitive of another verb (as is usually the case), the infinitive is put in place of the participle: thus, *er hat es nicht gekonnt*, but *er hat es nicht thun können*, ‘he has not been able to do it’; *ihr hattet mich sprechen wollen*, ‘you had wanted to speak to me’; *wir hätten warten müssen*, ‘we should have been obliged to wait.’

b. (240.1 c.) Some other verbs, especially *lassen*, 'let, cause' (also *heißen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *sehen*, and sometimes *lehren* and *lernen*), when governing another infinitive directly, make the same substitution: thus, *er hat uns warten lassen*, 'he has made us wait.'

144. The absence of a full conjugation to these auxiliaries in English makes the English and German equivalent expressions often very unlike one another. Thus, 'he could not have done it' is not *er könnte es nicht gethan haben*, but *er hätte es nicht thun können*. Usually, to turn the auxiliary into a phrase, like 'be able, be willing, be obliged,' etc., will give the key to the German expression: thus, *he would not have* (*er hätte nicht*) *been able* (*können*) *to do it* (*es thun*).

145. (253-8) The pret. subj. *dürfte* sometimes signifies a probable contingency: thus, *daß dürfte wahr sein*, 'that is likely to be true.' *Mögen* expresses concession and choice; its pret. subj. *möchte* is very common in the sense 'should (would) like to': thus, *ich möchte gehen*, 'I should like to go.' *Müssen* signifies necessity of any kind; often it is to be rendered by 'cannot but' or the like: thus, *man müßte lachen*, 'one could not help laughing.' *Sollen* implies the exercise of authority upon the actor; very often it is to be rendered by 'is to,' 'is intended to,' and the like: thus, *was soll geschehen*, 'what is to happen?' Sometimes it reports something resting on the authority of others: thus, *er soll schon hier sein*, 'he is said to be already here.' *Wollen*, besides the ordinary meanings given above, sometimes signifies a claim or assertion: thus, *er will Sie gesehen haben*, 'he claims to have seen you'; and rarely something impending: thus, *er wollte sterben*, 'he was on the point of dying.'

146. (259) The modal auxiliaries not seldom occur without any infinitive dependent upon them; such an infinitive being supplied in sense from the connection: as, *ich thue, was ich kann*, 'I do what I can [do]'; or implied in an adverb of motion: as, *wohin sollen die*, 'whither are they to [go]?' or otherwise understood: as, *was soll diese Rede*, 'what is this talk intended to [signify]?' Sometimes its place is taken by *es*, *daß*, or the like, as by *so, do so*, etc., in English. *Wollen* is sometimes a real transitive, in the sense of 'desire'; *mögen* in that of 'like'; and *können* in that of 'know,' with the name of a language.

147. (260) *Wissen*, 'know, know how,' has a conjugation like that of the modal auxiliaries: thus, pres. indic. *weiß*, *weißt*, *weißt*, *wissen*, *wißt*, *wissen*; pres. subj. *wisse*, etc.; pret. indic. and subj. *wußte*, etc., *wüßte*, etc.; past pple. *gewußt*.

148. (439. 2) *Arrangement*. The transposed personal verb (after a relative or a subordinating conjunction: see 133b.) may not be put at the end of a clause after two (or more) infinitives of which the last has the value of a participle, but must stand instead next before them: thus, *weil ich nicht habe gehen können*, 'because I have not been able to go,' *der mich neulich hat ermorden lassen wollen*, 'who has recently wanted to have me murdered.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>allein</i> , <i>adv.</i> alone. | <i>noch nicht</i> , not yet. |
| <i>fort</i> , <i>adv.</i> forth, onward, away. | <i>sagen</i> , <i>v. N.</i> say. |
| <i>gehen</i> , <i>v. O.</i> walk. | <i>die Schule</i> , <i>-len.</i> school. |
| <i>hin</i> , <i>adv.</i> hence, that way. | <i>schon</i> , <i>adv.</i> already. |
| <i>lange</i> , <i>adv.</i> for a long time. | <i>sogleich</i> , <i>adv.</i> immediately, directly. |
| <i>lassen</i> , <i>v. O.</i> cause, make. | <i>thun</i> , <i>v. O.</i> do, perform. |
| <i>lehren</i> , <i>v. N.</i> teach. | <i>warten</i> , <i>v. N.</i> wait. |
| <i>lernen</i> , <i>v. N.</i> learn. | <i>wissen</i> , <i>v. N.</i> know. |
| <i>nichts</i> , <i>pron.</i> nothing. | |

EXERCISE 21.

MODAL AUXILIARIES.

1. Willst du nicht in die Schule gehen?
2. Ich möchte hin, aber ich darf nicht.
3. Wir konnten nicht kommen, weil wir nach Berlin haben gehen müssen.
4. Sie durften ihm nichts sagen.
5. Warum schlugst du den Hund? das hättest du nicht thun sollen.
6. Ich wollte das Mädchen singen lehren, aber sie mag nichts lernen.
7. Sie haben uns lange warten lassen.
8. Die kleinen Kinder dürfen nicht kommen, aber die größeren müssen es.
9. Ich mag nicht allein reisen, jetzt aber werde ich es thun müssen.
10. Ich wußte nicht, was ich ihm sagen sollte.
11. Er soll schon hier sein; man will ihn gesehen haben; aber er muß sogleich fort.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| ask, <i>v.</i> fragen, <i>N.</i> | learn, <i>v.</i> lernen. |
| do, <i>v.</i> thun. | make, <i>v.</i> lassen. |
| find, <i>v.</i> finden, <i>O.</i> | many, <i>adj.</i> viel. |
| German, <i>adj.</i> deutsch. | stay, <i>v.</i> bleiben, <i>O.</i> |
| go, <i>v.</i> gehen. | teacher, <i>der</i> Lehrer, =r̄s, =r̄. |
| help, <i>v.</i> helfen, <i>O.</i> | tell, <i>v.</i> sagen. |
| here, <i>adv.</i> hier. | to-morrow, <i>adv.</i> morgen. |
| industrious, <i>adj.</i> fleißig. | with, <i>prep.</i> mit. |
| know, <i>v.</i> wissen. | yet, noch. |
| language, <i>die</i> Sprache, =chen. | not yet, noch nicht. |

EXERCISE 22.

1. Can you go with us?
2. I can go to-day, but to-morrow I shall not be allowed [to do] so.
3. I wished to write a letter, but I could not, for I had to work.
4. May I ask what language you now desire to learn?
5. I should like to learn German, for I do not yet know it.
6. We do not always like to do what we ought.
7. Do you know what she has wanted to say to him?
8. I know it, but I may not tell it to you.
9. Children! you must be very industrious.
10. The teacher has made (lassen) us sing many songs.
11. He could not have found his book, if his sister had not helped him (*dat.*).
12. He is to stay here, if he comes.

PASSIVE VOICE.

149. (275-6) The passive conjugation is made with the auxiliary *werden*, 'become.' To make any given mode, tense, and person of the passive of a verb, add its past participle to the corresponding form of *werden*.

a. The participle of *werden* as passive auxiliary is *worden*, instead of *geworden*. The participle of the main verb is put after the personal verb-forms of the auxiliary, but before its infinitive and participle.

150. (277) The synopsis of the passive of *lieben*, 'love,' is as follows :

The simple forms of the auxiliary were given above (122 d).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present, 'I am loved,' etc.

ich werde geliebt

werde geliebt

Preterit, 'I was loved,' etc.

ich ward or wurde geliebt

würde geliebt

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect, 'I have been loved,' etc.

ich bin geliebt worden

sei geliebt worden

Pluperfect, 'I had been loved,' etc.

ich war geliebt worden

wäre geliebt worden

Future, 'I shall be loved,' etc.

ich werde geliebt werden

werde geliebt werden

Future Perfect, 'I shall have been loved,' etc.

ich werde geliebt worden sein

werde geliebt worden sein

Conditional, 'I should be loved,' etc.

Conditional Perfect.

ich würde geliebt werden

würde geliebt worden sein

IMPERATIVE, 'be loved.'

werde (du) geliebt

INFINITIVE, 'to be loved,' etc.

Present.

Perfect.

geliebt (zu) werden

geliebt worden (zu) sein

PARTICIPLES, 'being loved,' etc.

Present.

Past.

geliebt werdend

geliebt worden

151. (278) From the pres. pple. active, with *zu* before it, is made a future pass. pple., implying possibility or necessity ; it

is used only attributively: thus, *ein zu liebendes Kind*, 'a child to be loved.'

152. (279) Passives are made sometimes from intransitive verbs; especially an impersonal passive: thus, *es wurde gelacht*, 'there was laughing' (literally, 'it was laughed').

153. (281) The passive is much less common in German than in English; for it is often substituted a reflexive, or an active with the indefinite subject *man*: thus, *es fragt sich*, 'it is questioned' (literally, 'it questions itself'); *man sagt*, 'one says' (for 'it is said').

154. (282) The verb *sein* is also often used with the past participle of a verb, but indicates the result of the action, not its endurance. Thus, passive, *er wird geschlagen*, 'he is undergoing a beating, he is being beaten, some one is beating him'; but *er ist geschlagen*, 'he is a beaten man, some one has beaten him.'

155. (283) *Reflexive Conjugation.* A verb is made reflexive simply by adding the proper reflexive pronoun (84). A reflexive verb is often used for an English intransitive, sometimes for a passive: thus, *ich fürchte mich*, 'I am afraid,' *ich freue mich*, 'I rejoice.'

156. (285) *a.* An example of a tense inflected reflexively is:

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>ich freue mich</i> | <i>wir freuen uns</i> |
| 2. <i>du freust dich</i> | <i>ihr freut euch</i> |
| 3. <i>er freut sich</i> | <i>sie freuen sich</i> |

b. The compound tenses are *ich habe mich gefreut*, *ich werde mich freuen*, *ich werde mich gefreut haben*, and so on; the imperative, *freue dich*, *freut euch*.

c. A very few verbs take their reflexive object in the dative: for example, *ich schmeichle mir*, 'I flatter myself.'

157. (291-2) *a. Impersonal Verbs.* A verb is used impersonally in the 3d person singular, with the

indefinite subject *es*, 'it': thus, *es regnet*, 'it rains,' *es klopft*, 'it knocks' (i. e. 'there is a knocking'), *es hungert mich*, 'I am hungry' (literally, 'it hungers me'), *es gelingt mir*, 'I succeed' (literally, 'it proves successful for me').

b. Impersonal phrases are made with *sein* and *werden*, to express states of feeling, with a dative of the person affected: thus, *es ist mir wohl*, 'I feel well' (literally, 'it is well to me'), *es ward ihm bange*, 'he began to feel anxious' (literally, 'it became anxious to him').

c. *Es gibt*, etc., with following accusative, is equivalent to English 'there is, there are': thus, *es gibt viele da*, 'there are many there'; *es gab keinen Wein*, 'there was no wine.'

158. (293) But the impersonal subject *es* is very often omitted, especially when the object of the verb, or an adjunct qualifying it, comes to stand before it: thus, *mir dünkt*, 'me thinks,' *ihm hungerte*, 'he was hungry,' *wie wohl ist mir*, 'how well I feel.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| allgemein, <i>adj.</i> general. | <i>hungern</i> <i>v. N. impers.</i> hunger, be hungry. |
| Amerika, America. | |
| die Cholera, cholera. [fore it. | <i>nächst</i> , <i>adj.</i> next, nearest. |
| davor, <i>adv.</i> because of, or be- denn, <i>conj. or adv.</i> for, then. | <i>rauchen</i> , <i>v. N.</i> smoke. |
| eben, <i>adv.</i> even, just, exactly. | <i>regnen</i> , <i>v. N. impers.</i> rain. |
| ehren, <i>v. N.</i> honor. | <i>der Schüler</i> , - <i>es</i> , - <i>r.</i> scholar. |
| faul, <i>adj.</i> lazy. | <i>schicken</i> , <i>v. N.</i> send. |
| freigebig, <i>adj.</i> liberal. [of. | <i>sehnen</i> , <i>v. N. reflex.</i> long for. |
| fürchten, <i>v. N. reflex.</i> be afraid | <i>stark</i> , <i>adj.</i> strong. |
| gebären, <i>v. O.</i> bear, bring forth. | <i>tadeln</i> , <i>v. N.</i> blame. |
| glauben, <i>v. N.</i> believe. | <i>von</i> , <i>prep. of</i> , from, by. <i>wohl</i> , <i>adv.</i> well. |

EXERCISE 23.

PASSIVE, IMPERSONAL, AND REFLEXIVE VERBS.

1. Die fleißigen Schüler werden gelobt; die faulen tadeln man immer.
2. Der Brief, den ich ihm schicken werde, ist

noch nicht geschrieben; er wird eben jetzt von meinem Bruder geschrieben. 3. Schiller wurde im Jahre 1759 geboren. 4. Er wird allgemein geehrt, denn er ist reich und freigebig. 5. Ich fürchtete mich, als ich den großen Hund sah. 6. Wir sehnen uns nach unsren alten Freunden. 7. Es hungert mich; gieb mir Brod. 8. Hier gab es kein Brod und kein Wasser. 9. Wir konnten nicht fort, weil es so stark regnete. 10. Man glaubt, die Cholera wird im nächsten Jahre nach Amerika gebracht werden. 11. Es giebt viele arme Leute, die sich sehr davor fürchten. 12. Hier darf nicht geraucht werden. 13. Ihm war nicht recht wohl.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| be afraid, <i>v.</i> sich fürchten. | long for, <i>v.</i> sich sehnen. |
| all, <i>adj.</i> alle. | make, <i>v.</i> machen, <i>N.</i> |
| American, <i>der</i> Amerikaner, =rs, =r. | much, <i>adv.</i> viel. |
| be ashamed, <i>v.</i> sich schämen, <i>N.</i> | naughty, <i>adj.</i> unartig. |
| away, <i>adv.</i> fort. | read, <i>v.</i> lesen, <i>O.</i> |
| blame, <i>v.</i> tadeln. | rejoice, <i>v.</i> sich freuen, <i>N.</i> |
| cholera, Cholera. | remain, <i>v.</i> bleiben, <i>O.</i> |
| country, <i>das</i> Vaterland, =des, =änder. | soon, <i>adv.</i> bald. |
| dance, <i>v.</i> tanzen, <i>N.</i> | snow, <i>v.</i> schneien, <i>N. impers.</i> |
| exile, <i>der</i> Verbannte. | there are, es gibt. |
| fire, <i>das</i> Feuer, =rs, =r. | to-night, <i>adv.</i> heute Abend. |
| hate, <i>v.</i> hassen, <i>N.</i> | well, <i>adv.</i> wohl. |
| | when, <i>adv.</i> als, wann. |

EXERCISE 24.

1. The letter is written, and now it will be read.
2. The fire is being made, and the room will soon be warm.
3. My cousin has been praised by (von) his teacher.
4. The naughty boy was blamed, and was much ashamed (*refl.*).
5. There are bad men, who are

hated by all. 6. I shall rejoice when I see my mother. 7. The exile longs for (nach) his country. 8. It is snowing, and I must [go] away. 9. I do not feel well. 10. There are many Americans in Paris, but they will not remain there, for they are afraid (refl.) of (vor) the cholera. 11. There will be dancing to-night.

COMPOUND VERBS.

159. (297) *a.* Verbs are compounded with prefixes of two classes, separable and inseparable.

b. The SEPARABLE PREFIXES are used also as independent words, namely adverbs and prepositions, and are but loosely combined with the verb, being separated from it in many of its forms (as usually in English): thus, *ich gehe aus*, 'I go out,' *er brach ab*, 'he broke off.' With these the verb is said to be SEPARABLY COMPOUNDED.

c. The INSEPARABLE PREFIXES are never found in separate use, and always stand before the verb and are written as one word with it: thus, *ich bedenke*, 'I bethink,' *er vergiebt*, 'he forgives.' With these the verb is said to be INSEPARABLY COMPOUNDED.

160. (298) The separable prefixes are:

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| ab, 'off, down' | hin, 'from one' |
| an, 'on, at' | hinter, 'behind' |
| auf, 'up, upon' | mit, 'with' |
| aus, 'out, from' | nach, 'after' |
| bei, 'by, beside, with' | nieder, 'down' |
| da or } 'there, at' | ob, 'over, on' |
| dar, } 'there, at' | über, 'over' |
| durch, 'through' | um, 'around' |



| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| ein, 'in, into' | unter, 'under' |
| empor, 'up, aloft' | vor, 'before' |
| entzwei, 'in two, apart' | wider or } 'against' or |
| fort, 'forth, away' | wieder, } 'again' |
| gegen, 'against' | weg, 'away' |
| in, 'in' | zu, 'to' |
| heim, 'home' | zurück, 'back' |
| her, 'toward one' | zusammen, 'together' |

There are also combinations of some of the above with one another, especially with *hin*, *her*, *da* or *dar*: as, *hinab*, *herauf*, *darein*, *voran*.

161. (299) *a.* In the conjugation of a separably compounded verb, the prefix stands before the verb in the infinitive and both participles, but after it in all the other simple forms. It always has the accent.

b. In the former case, the prefix is written with the verb as a single word; in the latter case, it is separated from it; and, if the verb be followed by other adjuncts, the prefix stands at the end of the whole clause: thus, from *anfangen*, 'begin,' *ich fange an*, 'I begin'; *ich f i n g diesen Morgen früh zu studiren a n*, 'I began early this morning to study.' But if, by the rules for the arrangement of the sentence, the verb is removed to the end, it comes, even in the simple forms, to stand after its prefix, and is then written as one word with it: thus, *als ich diesen Morgen früh zu studiren a n f i n g*, 'as I began to study early this morning.'

c. The sign of the past participle, *ge*, stands

between the prefix and the root; also the sign of the infinitive, *zu*, when used: thus, *angefangen*, 'begun'; *anzufangen*, 'to begin' (written as one word).

162. (300) Examples: *anfangen*, 'begin'; *herannahen*, 'draw nigh.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

anfangen, *ging an*, *angefangen*. *herannahen*, *nahte heran*,
herangenaht.

INDICATIVE.

| | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>Present</i> , 'I begin,' etc. | 'I draw nigh,' etc. |
| s. I fange an | nahe heran |
| <i>Preterit</i> , 'I began,' etc. | 'I drew nigh,' etc. |
| s. I fing an | nahte heran |
| <i>Perfect</i> , 'I have begun,' etc. | 'I have drawn nigh,' etc. |
| s. I habe angefangen | bin herangenaht |
| <i>Pluperfect</i> , 'I had begun,' etc. | 'I had drawn nigh,' etc. |
| s. I hatte angefangen | war herangenaht |
| <i>Future</i> , 'I shall begin,' etc. | 'I shall draw nigh,' etc. |
| s. I werde anfangen | werde herannahen |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> , 'I shall have begun,' etc. | 'I shall have drawn nigh,' etc. |
| s. I werde angefangen haben | werde herangenaht sein. |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Present</i> , 'I may begin,' etc. | 'I may draw nigh,' etc. |
| s. I fange an etc., etc. | nahe heran etc., etc. |

CONDITIONAL.

| | |
|---|----------------------------|
| <i>Conditional</i> , 'I should begin,' etc. | 'I should draw nigh,' etc. |
| s. I würde anfangen | würde herannahen |

IMPERATIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 'begin,' etc. | 'draw nigh,' etc. |
| s. 2 fange an, fange du an | nahe heran, nahe du heran |

INFINITIVES.

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Present, 'to begin' | 'to draw nigh' |
| anfangen, anzufangen | herannahen, heranzunahen |
| Perfect, 'to have begun' | 'to have drawn nigh' |
| angefangen haben | herangenahnt sein |

PARTICIPLES.

| | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| Present, 'beginning' | 'drawing nigh' |
| anfangend | herannahend |
| Past, 'begun' | 'drawn nigh' |
| angefangen | herangenahnt |

163. (302) The inseparable prefixes are *be*, *ent* (or *emp*), *er*, *ge*, *ver*, and *zer*.

164. (303) They remain in close combination with the verb through its whole conjugation, forming with it an inseparable combination, of which the radical syllable receives the accent. The sign of the infinitive, *zu*, is put before the combination, as if it were a simple verb. The sign of the participle, *ge*, is omitted altogether.

165. (304) Examples: *beginnen*, 'begin,' *verreisen*, 'journey away.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS :

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>beginnen</i> , <i>begann</i> , <i>begonnen</i> . | <i>verreisen</i> , <i>verreiste</i> , <i>verreist</i> . |
|---|---|

INDICATIVE.

| | |
|----------------|--------------|
| beginne | verreise |
| begann | verreiste |
| habe begonnen | bin verreist |
| hatte begonnen | war verreist |

werde beginnen

werde verreisen

werde begonnen haben

werde verreist sein

SUBJUNCTIVE.

beginne

verreise

begänne or begönne

verreisete

etc., etc.

etc., etc.

CONDITIONAL.

würde beginnen

würde verreisen

etc., etc.

etc., etc.

IMPERATIVE.

beginne

verreise

INFINITIVES.

beginnen, zu beginnen

verreisen, zu verreisen

begonnen haben

verreist sein

PARTICIPLES.

beginnend

verreisend

begonnen

verreist

166. (305-6) A few verbs inseparably compounded take in addition a separable prefix : *e. g.*, *anerkennen* (*anzuerkennen*), *erkannte an*, *erkannt*. But no verb separably compounded has further an inseparable prefix ; nor does any verb take two inseparable prefixes.

167. (307, 405.iii.) The prefix *be* makes transitive verbs—either from intransitives or other transitives with changed construction, as *beklagen*, ‘bemoan,’ *besingen*, ‘sing about, besing’ ; or from nouns and adjectives, as *beseeeln*, ‘endow with a soul,’ *befreien*, ‘make free.’ *Ent* (emp, before *f*, in three verbs) makes especially verbs signifying removal or deprivation : thus, *entgehen*, *entkommen*, ‘get away, escape,’ *entfrästen*, ‘deprive of power,’ *entheiligen*, ‘desecrate.’ *Er* prefixed to verbs forms usually compounds signifying a gaining by means of the action expressed by the simple verb : thus, *erjagen*, ‘get by hunting,’ *ertanzen*, ‘bring on by dancing’ ; to adjectives, oftenest verbs signifying passing into a condition : thus, *erblässen*, ‘grow pale.’ *Ge* (with other verbs only) has quite various and indefinite meanings. *Ver* with verbs means most usually removal or de-

triment: thus, *verführen*, 'lead astray'; with nouns and adjectives it makes simple denominative verbs, usually transitive: thus, *verändern*, 'alter,' *vergläzen*, 'glaze,' *veralten*, 'grow old.' *Zer* signifies 'asunder, in pieces': thus, *zerbrechen*, 'break in pieces,' *zergliedern*, 'dismember.'

168. (308) *Prefixes separable or inseparable.* *a.* A few properly separable prefixes sometimes form inseparable compounds: they are *durch*, 'through,' *hinter*, 'behind,' *über*, 'over,' *um*, 'about,' *unter*, 'under,' *wieder* (or *wider*) 'again' (or 'against').

b. The separable compounds have the meanings of both parts nearly unchanged; the inseparable usually take an altered or figurative meaning: thus, *durchdringen*, 'crowd through,' *durchdring'en*, 'penetrate'; *um'gehen*, 'go about,' *umgeh'en*, 'evade.'

c. The compounds, of either class, are accented and conjugated according to the rules already given.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| abschreiben, <i>v. O.</i> copy. | dringen, <i>v. O.</i> press, throng. |
| abreisen, <i>v. N.</i> journey away. | durch, <i>prep.</i> through. |
| anfangen, <i>v. O.</i> begin. | durchdringen, <i>v. O.</i> penetrate, |
| ankleiden, <i>v. N.</i> put clothes up- on, clothe, dress. | pervade. |
| anziehen, <i>v. O.</i> draw on, put on. | einschlagen, <i>v. U.</i> overtake. |
| auferstehen, <i>v. O.</i> rise from the dead. | England, England. |
| aufgehen, <i>v. O.</i> go up, rise. | entfliehen, <i>v. O.</i> fly, escape. |
| aufstehen, <i>v. O.</i> get up, rise. | früher, <i>adv.</i> earlier, before. |
| aus sprechen, <i>v. O.</i> pronounce. | ganz, <i>adj.</i> whole, entire. |
| ausziehen, <i>v. O.</i> take off. | die Gasse, =sen. lane, street. |
| bald, <i>adv.</i> soon. | gelingen, <i>v. O. impers.</i> prove successful. |
| behandeln, <i>v. N.</i> handle, treat. | gestern, <i>adv.</i> yesterday. |
| die Bitte, =tten. request. | gewiß, <i>adv.</i> sure, certain.. |
| blind, <i>adj.</i> blind. | herannahen, <i>v. N.</i> draw near, approach. |
| deutsch, <i>adj.</i> German. | hinausgehen, <i>v. O.</i> go out. |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| hingehen, <i>v. O.</i> go forth. | vergessen, <i>v. O.</i> forget. |
| die Menge, =gen. mass, multitude. | verreisen, <i>v. N.</i> go on a journey, travel away. |
| mitnehmen, <i>v. O.</i> take along. | versprechen, <i>v. O.</i> promise. |
| nacheilen, <i>v. N.</i> hurry after. | vorsingen, <i>v. O.</i> sing before or for. |
| nun, <i>adv.</i> now, at present. | wegtragen, <i>v. O.</i> carry away. |
| die Sonne, =nen. sun. | wiederholen, <i>v. N.</i> repeat. |
| streng, <i>adj.</i> strict, severe. | wiederholen, <i>v. N.</i> fetch back. |
| der Tod, =des, =de. death. | die Wuth, fury, rage. |
| der Ueberschuh, =hes, =he. overshoe. | zerreißen, <i>v. O.</i> tear in pieces. |
| übersetzen, <i>v. U.</i> translate. | zurückkommen, <i>v. O.</i> come back. |

EXERCISE 25.

COMPOUND VERBS, SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

1. Die Schule singt gestern an, und ich bin heute hingangen.
2. Jetzt werde ich ihm die Lieder vorsingen, die ich abgeschrieben habe.
3. Der Tag naht heran; die Sonne wird bald aufgehen; stehen wir auf, und kleiden wir uns an.
4. Sie zog ihre Ueberschuhe an, als sie hinausging.
5. Wenn sie zurückkommt, werde ich schon abgereist sein.
6. Ich werde die Kinder mitnehmen.
7. Eilen Sie ihnen nach; Sie holen sie gewiß ein.
8. Was hat man Ihnen versprochen?
9. Ich spreche das Deutsch nicht gut aus, aber ich kann es ganz gut übersetzen.
10. Das Kleid ward zerrissen, und sie mußte es ausziehen.
11. Blinde Wuth durchdringt die Menge, die nun durch die Gassen dringt.
12. Ich verspreche Ihnen, daß ich Sie nicht vergessen werde, wenn Sie verreist sind.
13. Er wurde von seinem Vater so streng behandelt, daß er nach England entfliehen wollte; aber es gelang ihm nicht.
14. Nach dem Tode werden wir alle auferstehen.
15. Er wiederholte seine Bitte.
16. Hole den Wein wieder, den du früher weggetragen hast.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| America, Amerika. | overshoes, Ueberschuh. |
| answer, <i>v.</i> antworten, <i>N.</i> | plainly, <i>adv.</i> deutlich. |
| approach, <i>v.</i> heranrahlen. | plate, der Teller, =rs, =r. |
| begin, <i>v.</i> anfangen. | promise, <i>v.</i> versprechen. |
| behead, <i>v.</i> enthaupten, <i>N.</i> | pronounce, <i>v.</i> aussprechen. |
| break in pieces, <i>v.</i> zerbrechen, <i>O.</i> | put on, <i>v.</i> anziehen. |
| close, <i>v.</i> zumachen, <i>N.</i> | receive, <i>v.</i> empfangen. |
| come back, <i>v.</i> zurückkommen. | recognize, <i>v.</i> anerkennen, <i>N.</i> |
| dethrone, <i>v.</i> entthronen, <i>N.</i> | repeat, <i>v.</i> wiederholen, <i>N.</i> <i>insep.</i> |
| discover, <i>v.</i> entdecken, <i>N.</i> | rest, <i>v.</i> sich ausruhen, <i>N.</i> |
| door, die Thür, =ren. | school, die Schule, =len. |
| Englishman, der Engländer, =rs, =r. | sell, <i>v.</i> verkaufen, <i>N.</i> |
| evade, <i>v.</i> ausweichen, <i>O.</i> | set, <i>v.</i> untergehen, <i>O.</i> |
| evening, der Abend, =ds, =de. | slowly, <i>adv.</i> langsam. |
| fetch back, <i>v.</i> wied'erholen. | story, das Märchen, =ns, =n. |
| forget, <i>v.</i> vergessen, <i>O.</i> | successor, der Nachfolger, =rs, =r. |
| go out, <i>v.</i> ausgehen, <i>O.</i> | sun, die Sonne. |
| hasten after, <i>v.</i> nacheilen, <i>N.</i> | throw down, <i>v.</i> um'werfen. |
| how, <i>adv.</i> wie. | translate, <i>v.</i> übersez'en. |
| journey off, abreisen, <i>N.</i> | understand, <i>v.</i> verstehen, <i>O.</i> |
| lesson, die Aufgabe, =ben. | window, das Fenster, =rs, =r. |
| little, <i>adv.</i> wenig. | word, das Wort, =tes, =te or =örter. |
| open, <i>v.</i> aufmachen, <i>N.</i> | |

EXERCISE 26.

1. The school begins at (um) nine o'clock.
2. The children put on their overshoes, and went out.
3. The sun is setting, and evening is approaching ; come back and rest here.
4. I have not received the letter ; how can I answer it ?
5. He did not understand you ; for you did not pronounce the words plainly.
6. We shall journey off, but we shall not take thee along.
7. You have forgotten that you promised it to me.
8. She evaded me (*dat.*), when I hastened after her (*dat.*).

9. The plate was thrown down and broken in pieces.
 10. Open the window, and close the door. 11. Columbus discovered America in the year 1492. 12. She translated the story very well. 13. Fetch me back the book, and repeat the lesson slowly. 14. The English de-throned and beheaded their king. 15. Cromwell was recognized as his successor. 16. We have sold little and bought much.

ADVERBS.

169. (363-5) *a.* Most adjectives are used in their uninflected form as adverbs—but only rarely in the superlative (see above, 79, 82): thus, *blind*, ‘*blindly*,’ *blinder*, ‘*more blindly*’ (but *am blindesten*, ‘*most blindly*’).

b. Other adverbs are such originally: thus, *oft*, ‘*often*,’ *schon*, ‘*already*,’ *gern*, ‘*willingly*’; or they are formed by adverbial endings, as *lith*, *ens*: thus, *freilich*, ‘*certainly*,’ *erstens*, ‘*firstly*’; or they are cases used adverbially: thus, *theils*, ‘*in part*,’ *linfs*, ‘*to the left*’; or they are compounds, as *einmal*, ‘*once*,’ *zuerst*, ‘*first*,’ *fürwahr*, ‘*verily*’.

c. The principal simple adverbs of place and direction, being also separable prefixes of verbs, have been given above (160).

170. (368) Adverbs, as such, are not generally compared; exceptions are *oft* and *ehe*. *Mehr*, ‘*more*,’ and *am meisten*, ‘*most*,’ are sometimes prefixed to an adverb, as to an adjective.

PREPOSITIONS.

171. (372) Prepositions may be classified according to the case they govern: as the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and the dative or accusative.

172. (373) Those governing the genitive are :

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| — anstatt, statt, | ‘instead of’ |
| — halber or halben, | ‘for the sake of’ |
| — außerhalb, | ‘outside’ |
| — innerhalb, | ‘within’ |
| — oberhalb, | ‘above’ |
| — unterhalb, | ‘below’ |
| kraft, | ‘in virtue of’ |
| längs, | ‘along’ |
| — laut, | ‘according to’ |
| trotz, | ‘in spite of’ |
| — um....willen, | ‘on account of’ |
| ungeachtet, | ‘notwithstanding’ |
| unfern, unweit, | ‘not far from’ |
| mittels, or vermittelst, | ‘by means of’ |
| vermöge, | ‘by dint of’ |
| — während, | ‘during’ |
| — wegen, | ‘on account of’ |
| zufolge, | ‘in consequence of’ |
| — diesseit (or -seits), | ‘on this side’ |
| — jenseit (or -seits), | ‘beyond’ |

Thus, statt der goldenen Lieder, ‘instead of the golden songs’; jenseit des Forstes, ‘beyond the forest.’

Some of these (especially längs, trotz, zufolge) sometimes take a dative case. Halben or halber follows the noun; ungedacht and wegen sometimes do so; um....willen takes the noun between its two parts: thus, um unsrer Freundschaft willen, ‘for the sake of our friendship.’ Halben, wegen, willen form compounds with possessives: thus, meinenthalben.

173. (374) The prepositions governing the dative are :

| | | | |
|--------|--------------|----------------|----------------------|
| aus, | 'out' | —gleich, | 'like' |
| bei, | 'by' | —sammt, nebst, | 'along with' |
| mit, | 'with' | —nächst, | 'next to' |
| —ob, | 'above, for' | —binnen, | 'within' |
| —von, | 'of' | —außer, | 'outside, except' |
| —zu, | 'to' | —entgegen, | 'against' |
| —nach, | 'after' | —gegenüber, | 'opposite' |
| —seit, | 'since' | —gemäß, | 'in accordance with' |
| | | —zuwider, | 'contrary to' |

Nach, gleich, and gemäß either precede or follow the noun; entgegen, gegenüber, and zuwider follow it.

174. (375) The prepositions governing the accusative only are :

| | | | |
|--------|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| bis, | 'unto, till' | gegen, gen, | 'against' |
| durch, | 'through' | ohne, | 'without' |
| für, | 'for' | um, | 'about' |
| wider, | 'against' | sonder, | 'without' |

Bis is generally followed by another preposition. Um and ohne (also statt or anstatt) govern also an infinitive preceded by zu.

175. (376) Nine prepositions govern sometimes the dative and sometimes the accusative—the dative when they indicate locality merely, or answer the question 'where'? the accusative when they imply motion toward, or answer the question 'whither.' They are

| | | | |
|-----|----------|--------|----------|
| an, | 'on, at' | neben, | 'beside' |
|-----|----------|--------|----------|

| | | | |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-----------------|
| auf, | 'upon' | über, | 'above, across' |
| hinter, | 'behind' | unter, | 'under, among' |
| in, | 'in, into' | vor, | 'before' |
| zwischen, 'between.' | | | |

Thus, er lag auf der Erde und hatte das Ohr auf den Rasen gelegt, 'he lay on the ground and had laid his ear on the turf'; er ging ins Haus und blieb lange in demselben, 'he went into the house and stayed a long time in it.'

It is only by the use of *in* and *into* that the English makes a corresponding distinction. Hence the ground of the difference of case is less obvious to us, and needs to be carefully noted wherever it occurs.

176. (379) A noun governed by a preposition is often also followed by an adverb of place or direction, for emphasis or further definition: thus, um ihn her, 'round about him,' aus dem Walde hinaus, 'out of the wood,' nach der Mitte zu, 'toward the middle,' hinter Bäumen hervor, 'forth from behind trees,' unter dem Tisch hervor, 'forth from under the table,' zum Fenster hinaus, 'out of the window,' an einem vorüber, 'past one.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| anschén, v. <i>O.</i> look at. | der Markt, -tes, -ärkte. market. |
| der Boden, -ns. floor, ground. | sein, v. <i>N.</i> reflex. seat one's |
| dann, <i>adv.</i> then, at that time. | self. |
| endlich, <i>adv.</i> at last. | sízen, v. <i>O.</i> sit. |
| erblíden, v. <i>N.</i> catch sight of, | der Soldat, -ten, -ten. soldier. |
| descriy. | die Straße, -ßen. street. |
| fahren, v. <i>O.</i> go, move, drive. | der Stuhl, -les, -ühle. chair. |
| das Fenster, -rs, -r. window. | die Thür, -ren. door. |
| flüchten, v. <i>N.</i> reflex. run away, | der Tisch, -sches, -sche. table. |
| take flight. | überall, <i>adv.</i> everywhere. |
| halb, <i>adj.</i> half. | vorübergehen, v. <i>O.</i> go past, pass |
| Heinrich, Henry. | by. |
| hinaussehen, v. <i>O.</i> look out, look | wieder, <i>adv.</i> again. |
| forth. | der Wunsch, -sches, -ünsche. wish. |

EXERCISE 27.

ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

1. Während einer ganzen Stunde suchte sie ihn überall, im Hause, auf der Straße, und außerhalb der Stadt; dann ging sie wieder ins Haus, und fand ihn endlich in seinem Zimmer auf dem Boden. 2. Ich wollte um seinetwillen nach der Stadt gehen; aber als ich zum Fenster hinaussah, erblickte ich ihn mir gegenüber. 3. Sie ging an mir vorüber und sah mich nicht an; dann trat sie an die Thür. 4. Heinrich flüchtete sich hinter das Haus, weil er sich vor dem Soldaten fürchtete. 5. Er saß vor mir auf einem Stuhle am Tisch. 6. Sie setzten sich an den Tisch, und fingen an zu schreiben. 7. Die arme Frau geht durch die Stadt, von einem Haus zum andern, und sucht Brod für ihre Kinder. 8. Binnen einer halben Stunde bin ich bei dir. 9. Ihrem Wunsche gemäß bin ich seit dem Tage nicht auf dem Gebirge gewesen. 10. Er ist über den Markt gefahren.

VOCABULARY.

also, *adv.* auch.
 distant, entfernt.
 floor, Boden.
 Germany, Deutschland, =s.
 go along, *v.* mitgehen, *O.*
 home, at home, zu Hause.
 lay, *v.* legen, *N.*
 lie, *v.* liegen, *O.*
 look upon, *v.* betrachten, *N.*
 morning, der Morgen, =ns, =n.

mountain, der Berg, =ges, = ge.
 river, der Fluß, =sses, =üsse.
 seat one's self, *v.* sich setzen.
 sink, *v.* hinuntergehen, *O.*
 sit, *v.* sitzen.
 stand, *v.* stehen, *O.*
 swim, *v.* schwimmen, *O.*
 talk, *v.* sprechen, *O.*
 week, die Woche, =chen.

EXERCISE 28.

1. I laid the book on the table. 2. Now it lies on the floor, behind the chair. 3. When did you go into the city? 4. During the morning I shall also be in the

city. 5. I went along the river outside the city, and talked with my friend. 6. The boy swam over the river, and his dog swam beside him. 7. I sat on a chair under the trees, and looked upon the sun, which was sinking behind the distant mountains. 8. Seat thyself beside me, and let us talk of our friends. 9. He stayed at home instead of going (*inf.*) to school. 10. Within a week I shall be outside of Germany. 11. In spite of their warm clothes, the children are very cold. 12. He stands between the house and the tree.

CONJUNCTIONS.

177. (383) Conjunctions may be divided into three classes, with reference to their effect on the arrangement of the clauses they introduce.

178. (384) General connectives, which do not change the order. These are: *und*, 'and,' *aber*, *allein*, *sondern*, 'but,' *denn*, 'for,' *entweder*, 'either,' *oder*, 'or.' These stand at the head of the clause (except *aber*, which has great freedom of position).

179. (385) Adverbial conjunctions, which are strictly adverbs, qualifying the verb of the clause, and which, like any other adverb at the head of the clause, give it the inverted order—that is, cause the subject to follow its verb. Such are: *auch*, 'also,' *doch*, 'though, yet,' *außerdem*, 'besides,' *dagegen*, 'on the contrary,' *deswegen*, 'therefore,' *folglich*, 'consequently,' *darauf*, 'thereupon,' etc., etc.: thus, *darauf ging er fort*, 'thereupon he went off,' *doch ist er da*, 'yet he is there.'

180. (386) Subordinating conjunctions, which give the clause they introduce a dependent relation to some other clause. Such a dependent clause assumes the transposed order—that is, the personal verb is removed to the end. The most important of these are:

| | | | |
|----------|-----------------|----------|------------|
| als, | 'when, as' | seitdem, | 'since' |
| bevor, | 'before' | während, | 'while' |
| bis, | 'until' | wann, | 'when' |
| da, | 'as, since' | weil, | 'because' |
| damit, | 'in order that' | wenn, | 'if, when' |
| dass, | 'that' | wie, | 'how, as' |
| ehe, | 'before' | wo, | 'where' |
| indem, | 'while' | wohin, | 'whither' |
| nachdem, | 'after' | wofür, | 'in case' |
| ob, | 'whether, if' | etc. | |

Thus, *ob er wiederkommt*, 'whether he comes back'; *dass er recht bald kommen wird*, 'that he will come quite soon'; *damit ich ihn wiedersehe*, 'that I may see him again'; *weil ich ihn nicht gesehen habe*, 'because I have not seen him'; *die Art, wie man den Krieg führt*, 'the way in which they conduct the war'; *der Ort, wohin sie ihn geführt haben*, 'the place to which they have conducted him.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| außerdem, <i>adv.</i> besides. | nirgends, <i>adv.</i> nowhere, in no place. |
| beide, <i>adj.</i> both. | sondern, <i>conj.</i> but. |
| einladen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> invite. | wiederkehren, <i>v. N.</i> come back, return. |
| entweder...oder, either...or | |
| gefallen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> please, suit. | |
| gleich, <i>adj.</i> like, similar. | wirklich, <i>adj.</i> actual, real. |
| nachfolgen, <i>v. N.</i> follow after. | |

EXERCISE 29.

CONJUNCTIONS.

[The use of the classes of conjunctions has been explained and illustrated in the exercises already given. A few additional sentences are given here.]

1. Entweder wir werden warten, bis Sie kommen, oder Sie folgen uns gleich nach.
2. Er wird nicht allein, sondern mit seiner Schwester kommen, denn wir haben sie beide eingeladen.
3. Außerdem haben wir noch viele eingeladen.
4. Während ich mit ihm sprach, gingen die Kinder, wohin sie wollten; und da er jetzt fort ist, kann ich sie nirgends finden.
5. Als sie abreiste, hat sie mir versprochen recht bald wiederzukehren; jetzt aber weiß ich nicht, ob sie wirklich kommt.
6. Ich thue es, weil es mir gefällt.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|--|
| although, <i>conj.</i> obgleich. | play together, <i>v.</i> zusammen spielen, <i>N.</i> |
| eat, <i>v.</i> essen, <i>O.</i> | so, <i>adv.</i> so. |
| either...or, entweder...oder. | tired, <i>adj.</i> ermüdet. |
| from, <i>von.</i> | wait, <i>v.</i> erwarten, <i>N.</i> |
| hungry, <i>adj.</i> hungrig. | weak, <i>adj.</i> schwach. |
| industriously, <i>adv.</i> fleißig. | |
| journey away, <i>v.</i> abreisen, <i>N.</i> | |

EXERCISE 30.

1. Wait until she comes back.
2. If you are not hungry, you must not eat.
3. He works industriously, although he is so old and weak.
4. After he had been long in Berlin, he went to Paris.
5. Either the child is tired, or it is sick.
6. The evening is so beautiful that I cannot stay at home.
7. The mother wrote a letter while the children played together.
8. Before you journey away from here, tell me whither you are going.

SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF DECLENSION.

181. In addition to their uses which correspond so nearly with those of the same cases (or phrases with *of* and *to*) in English that they do not need to be explained here:—

182. (219.5) *a.* The genitive is sometimes used with a verb in the manner of a direct object: thus, *der warmen Sonne achten*, 'to heed the warm sun,' *ich warte seiner*, 'I wait for him,' *ihr spottet mein*, 'ye mock at me.'

b. Much more often, the genitive is second object of a verb, especially of a reflexive: thus, *erbarme dich meiner*, 'have pity on me!'

183. (220) *a.* A genitive is often used adverbially, especially to denote time: thus, *eines Tages*, 'one day,' *Morgens*, 'in the morning,' *alles Ernstes*, 'in all seriousness.' And such a genitive has occasionally the value of a predicate adjective: thus, *ich bin Willens*, 'I am inclined' ('of a mind').

b. A genitive with an interjection indicates the cause of the exclamation: thus, *ah des Unglücks*, 'alas for the mishap!'

c. For the genitive with prepositions, see 172.

184. (222-3) *a.* Besides the verbs that take a dative as second or remoter object, a great many are followed by a dative used like a direct object: thus, *helfst mir*, 'help me,' *sie folgte ihm*, 'she followed him,' *seid ihr ihnen nicht begegnet*, 'did you not meet them?' *einem ausweichen*, 'to avoid one.'

b. Werden is used with a dative to signify coming into possession: thus, *das wird mir*, 'that becomes mine.'

c. For the dative with *sein* and *werden* used impersonally, see 157 b. ; other impersonals sometimes take a dative object: thus, *mir schwindelt*, 'I am giddy.'

d. For a dative pronoun in the possessive sense, see 90 ; less often, a noun is used in the same way: thus, *seinem Vater um den Hals fallend*, 'falling upon his father's neck.'

e. For the dative with prepositions, see 173, 175.

185. (227) A few verbs govern two accusatives: thus, *ich lehre ihn die Musik*, 'I teach him music'; but often, where we use a second accusative, the German uses a preposition with the noun: thus, *sie wählten ihn zum König*, 'they chose him king,' *ich halte ihn für meinen Freund*, 'I deem him my friend.'

186. (229) An accusative sometimes depends on a phrase composed of a predicate adjective with *sein* or *werden*: thus, *ich kann ihn nicht los werden*, 'I cannot get rid of him,' *ich bin es satt*, 'I am tired of it.'

187. (230) *a.* The accusative is used to express measure, of time, space, etc. : thus, *einen Augenblick hörchen*, 'to listen a moment,' *acht Meilen tief*, 'eight miles deep,' *das kostet zwei Thaler*, 'that costs two dollars.'

b. Time when is expressed by the accusative: thus, *das geschah jedes Jahr*, 'that happened every year,' *komm diesen Abend*, 'come this evening.'

c. An accusative is used absolutely, with an adjective (especially a participle) or a prepositional adjunct, to express an accompanying circumstance, where in English we should generally use *with* or *having*: thus, *die Mutter erscheint, das Kind im Arme*, 'the mother appears, with (or having) her child on

her arm,' wirst uns, die Fackel umgewandt, 'beckons to us with inverted torch.'

d. For the accusative with prepositions, see 174, 175.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| des Abend, =d ⁸ , =de. evening. | herzlich, <i>adj.</i> hearty, cordial. |
| achten, <i>v. N.</i> prize, notice. | der Januar, =r ⁸ . January. |
| anfangs, <i>adv.</i> in the beginning. | der Kaiser, =r ⁸ , =r. emperor. |
| ausweichen, <i>v. O.</i> avoid. | das Leben, =n ⁸ , =n. life. |
| die Bank, =änke. bench. | los, <i>adj.</i> loose, rid of, free. |
| begegnen, <i>v. N.</i> meet. | das Preußen, =n ⁸ . Prussia. |
| bitten, <i>v. O.</i> beg, implore. | retten, <i>v. N.</i> save. |
| dadurch, <i>adv.</i> therethrough, by that means | der Rücken, =ens, =en. back. |
| danken, <i>v. N.</i> thank. | stützen, <i>v. N.</i> prop up, support. |
| Deutschland, Germany. | unglücklich, <i>adj.</i> unhappy, un- fortunate. |
| erinnern, <i>v. N. reflex.</i> remember. | vielleicht, <i>adv.</i> perhaps. |
| ernennen, <i>v. N.</i> appoint, name. | der Wald, =des, =älder. wood, forest. |
| das Geld, =des, =der. money. | Wilhelm, William. |
| gegen, <i>prep.</i> against, toward. | |
| helfen, <i>v. O.</i> help. | |

EXERCISE 31.

SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF DECLENSION.

1. Ich erinnere mich eines armen, unglücklichen Mannes, dem ich eines Tages im Wald^e begegnet bin. 2. Anfangs achtete ich seiner nicht; aber er folgte mir, und bat mich ihm zu helfen. 3. Ich wollte ihm ausweichen, aber es gelang mir nicht; und ich ward ihn nicht los, bis ich ihm etwas Geld gegeben hatte. 4. Er dankte mir herzlich, und ich glaube, ich habe ihm dadurch das Leben vielleicht gerettet. 5. Jeden Abend setze ich mich auf diese Bank, den Rücken gegen den Baum gestützt. 6. Am 18. Januar 1871 wurde der König Wilhelm von Preußen zum Kaiser von Deutschland ernannt.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| avoid, <i>v.</i> ausweichen. | moment, die Minute, <i>=ten.</i> |
| comrade, <i>der Kamerad, =ds, =den.</i> | no, <i>adv.</i> nein. [men, <i>N.</i> |
| field, <i>das Feld, =des, =der.</i> | pity, take pity, <i>v.</i> sich erbarmen, <i>O.</i> |
| give back, <i>v.</i> zurückgeben, <i>O.</i> | rid, be rid of, <i>v.</i> los werden, <i>O.</i> |
| gun, <i>die Flinten, =en.</i> | ring, <i>der Ring, =gs, =ge.</i> |
| life, <i>Leben.</i> | save, <i>v.</i> retten. |
| meet, <i>v.</i> begegnen, <i>N.</i> | till, <i>conj.</i> bis. |
| — go to meet, <i>v.</i> entgegensehen, <i>O.</i> | whole, <i>adj.</i> ganz. |

EXERCISE 32.

1. Have you met my brother this morning ? 2. No, but I am waiting for him here. 3. If he wants to avoid me, I shall follow him ; and he will not be rid of me till he has given me back the ring. 4. Did the man help the boy ? 5. Yes, he took pity on him, and saved his life. 6. He always works the whole day in (auf) the field, but in the evening he goes to school. 7. He cannot wait a moment. 8. His gun in his hand, he went to meet his comrades. 9. The count has made this young man the teacher of his son.

SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

188. (321-2) *a.* For the use of a verb in the third person after a relative pronoun, see 105. For the use of a plural verb after the indefinite subjects *es, das*, and the like, see 87, 94b.

b. With the name, or title, or pronoun representing a great personage, a plural verb is often used : thus, *seine Majestät sind hier*, 'his Majesty is here.'

189. (324) *a.* The present tense is used for the past in lively narration, and not seldom for the future : thus, *ich stehe still und seh' mich um*, 'I stood

still and looked about'; *wie fang' ich's an*, 'how shall I set about it?'

b. To signify what has been and still is, or what had been and still was, the present and preterit are used respectively (not the perfect and pluperfect, as in English): thus, *hast du schon lange hier*, 'have you been here already long?' *er war schon lange da*, 'he had been there already a long time.'

190. (328.2) The future is sometimes used to express a conjecture: thus, *das wird wohl Ihr Bruder sein*, 'that is your brother, is it not?'

191. (329-32) *a.* The subjunctive corresponds in part to the English subjunctive, in part to our compound tenses formed with *may*, *might*, *would*, and *should*.

b. It is often used to express a wish or direction: thus, *er sei gesegnet*, 'may he be blest,' *lang lebe der König*, 'long live the king!' *wäre er nur hier*, 'were he only here!'

Hence it is used to supply the lacking persons of the imperative: see 124.

c. In a conditional sentence, expressing that if a certain condition were true (but it is not) something else would be the case (but it is not), the past tenses of the subjunctive (pret. and plup.) are used in both clauses: thus, *ich wäre glücklicher, wenn ich zu Hause geblieben wäre*, 'I should be happier, if I had stayed at home.' In the clause expressing the conclusion, the conditional also may be used: thus, *ich würde glücklicher sein, wenn*, etc.

d. Either of the clauses may stand first; and the sense of 'if' in the condition may be expressed

either by *wenn*, or by the inverted arrangement (204), by putting the verb first and the subject after it; and if the condition precedes, the conclusion is generally introduced by *so*, 'then, in that case': thus, *wäre ich zu Hause geblieben, so wäre ich glücklicher* (or *so würde ich glücklicher sein*), 'if I had stayed at home, (then) I should be happier': *hätte er gerufen, so hätten sie ihn gefunden* (or *sie hätten ihn gefunden, wenn er gerufen hätte*), 'if he had cried out, they would have found him'; *wenn er käme, so ginge ich fort* (or *so würde ich fortgehen*), 'if he came, I should go away.'

192. (333) *a.* The subjunctive is also much used as the form of indirect discourse—that is, as expressing something reported or contemplated by another, and not stated on the authority of the speaker or writer: thus, *er sagt, er achte mich und wünsche meine Freundschaft*, 'he says [that] he respects me and desires my friendship'; *wir wissen kaum, was zu thun sei*, 'we hardly know what is to be done'; *denkt man, er gehe weg*, 'if one thinks he is going away.'

b. Such a subjunctive, even after a verb in a past tense, is regularly and usually the present, if the present would have been used in stating the same thing directly: thus, *sie glaubten, daß es wahr sei*, 'they believed that it *was* true' (because they would have said *„es ist wahr,“* 'it *is* true'); *man fragte, wer mitgehe*, 'they asked who was going along' (*„wer geht mit,“* 'who *is* going along?'). But not seldom the subjunctive is made past (as in

English), especially in more colloquial style: thus, *sie fragten, ob sie recht wüßte, wer ihr Mann wäre*, 'they asked if she really knew who her husband was.'

c. Sometimes the verb on which the subjunctive should depend is not expressed, or is replaced by a noun of kindred meaning: thus, *er wurde geschlagen, weil er unartig gewesen sei*, 'he was beaten because [it was claimed that] he had been naughty'; *aus Besorgniß, daß er Unruhen erregen werde*, 'out of apprehension that he would stir up disorders'; *du hättest es gesagt*, '[do you assert that] you have said so?'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ach! ah! alas! | der Krieg, =gs, =ge. war. |
| angenehm, <i>adj.</i> pleasant. | die Landreise, =sen. journey in |
| ankommen, <i>v. O.</i> arrive. | the country. |
| anvertrauen, <i>v. N.</i> confide. | möglich, <i>adj.</i> possible. |
| aufheben, <i>v. O.</i> lift up, put an | die Nachricht, =ten. news. |
| end to. | ohne, <i>prep.</i> without, but for. |
| beschäftigt, <i>adj.</i> busy. | schrecklich, <i>adj.</i> terrible, fright- |
| däß, that, so that. | ful. |
| das Ende, =des, =den. end. | selbst, <i>pron.</i> self. |
| enthalten, <i>v. O.</i> contain. | die Sitzung, =gen. sessions. |
| früh, <i>adj.</i> early. | spät, <i>adj.</i> late. |
| der Führer, =rs, =r. guide. | wichtig, <i>adj.</i> weighty. |
| zu Hause, at home. | die Woche, =chen. week. |
| heutig, <i>adj.</i> today's. | die Zeitung, =gen. newspaper. |
| taum, <i>adv.</i> hardly, scarcely. | zu, <i>adv.</i> too. |

EXERCISE 33.

SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

1. Wäre ich früher eingeladen worden, so wäre ich vielleicht hingegangen; aber jetzt ist es zu spät.
2. Haben Sie die heutige Zeitung gesehen? man sagt, sie enthalte wichtige Nachrichten.
3. Es ist kaum möglich, daß die Sitzung schon aufgehoben sei.
4. Ach! daß dieser schreckliche Krieg schon zu Ende wäre.
5. Bleibt er wohl lange bei Ihnen?
6. Er ist

schon seit Wochen hier. 7. Er sagte, er würde nicht gekommen sein, wenn er nicht geglaubt hätte, daß ich zu Hause sei. 8. Es wäre vielleicht angenehmer gewesen, wenn wir die Landreise ohne Führer gemacht hätten. 9. Mein Bruder hat mir geschrieben, er sei glücklich angekommen, und werde mir bald ein Buch schicken, das ihm mein Onkel für mich anvertraut habe; er könne nicht selbst zu mir kommen, weil er zu beschäftigt sei.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| already, <i>adv.</i> schon. | maintain, <i>v.</i> behaupten, <i>U.</i> |
| believe, <i>v.</i> glauben, <i>U.</i> | news, Nachricht. |
| cool, <i>adj.</i> kühl. | Oh! Ach! |
| die, <i>v.</i> sterben, <i>O.</i> | return, <i>v.</i> zurückkommen, <i>O.</i> |
| end, Ende. | sorry I am, es thut mir leid. |
| go away, <i>v.</i> fortgehen, <i>O.</i> | spend, <i>v.</i> zubringen, <i>U.</i> |
| grieved I am, es thut mir leid. | truth, die Wahrheit, -sten. |
| hardly, <i>adv.</i> kaum. | weather, das Wetter, -rs. |
| headache, das Kopfsweh, -hs. | whether, <i>conj.</i> ob. |
| lose, <i>v.</i> verlieren, <i>O.</i> | visit, <i>v.</i> besuchen, <i>U.</i> |

EXERCISE 34.

1. I should have come, had I not been so ill. 2. If the weather were cooler, we should be able to work better. 3. The boy said he had lost the money, but we hardly believe he has told us the truth. 4. They maintain that the war is already at *an* end, and that the emperor will soon return to Berlin. 5. Oh, that it were true! 6. I asked him whether he was tired; he answered that he had a headache, and could work no longer. 7. I was grieved, for he had said that he was going away. 8. She wrote me she should spend the winter in Paris; she was sorry that she could not visit me. 9. I believe he would have died, if the news had not been good.

193. (340) Any infinitive may be used directly as a noun, with or without the article; it is always neuter, and of the first declension, first class (55): thus, *das Stehen wird mir sauer*, 'standing is growing hard for me.'

194. (341-3) *a.* The infinitive generally (as in English) takes for its sign the preposition *zu*, 'to.'

b. But it is used without *zu* after the auxiliary *werden* and the modal auxiliaries; also after *lassen*, 'let, cause, make,' *sehen*, 'see,' *hören*, 'hear,' *fühlen*, 'feel,' *heißen*, 'bid,' *lehren*, 'teach,' *lernen*, 'learn,' *helfen*, 'help,' and a few others of less common occurrence.

c. Of all these verbs (as in the case of the modal auxiliaries: see 143) the infinitive also is generally used instead of the participle in compound tenses when used with another infinitive: thus, *er hat uns warten lassen*, 'he has made us wait'; *ich hatte ihn laufen sehen*, 'I had seen him run.'

— **195.** (343) The active infinitive is sometimes used where we put a passive. This is especially common with *lassen*: thus, *er ließ drei Ringe machen*, 'he caused three rings to be made' (lit'ly, 'he caused to make three rings'); *er wollte sich nicht abhalten lassen*, 'he would not let himself be restrained' (lit'ly, 'let [any one] restrain him'); but also, *ich höre euch preisen*, 'I hear you praised' (lit'ly, 'I hear [people] praise you'); *was ist zu thun*, 'what is to be done?'

196. (343) An infinitive is used in the sense of a present

participle with *bleiben* (and sometimes with *finden*): thus, *sie blieben stecken*, 'they remained sticking.' *Spazieren*, 'go pleasure-ing,' is used with a verb of motion in such phrases as *er fährt spazieren*, 'he takes a drive,' *ich reite spazieren*, 'I ride out (for pleasure).' Similar is *betteln gehen*, 'go a-begging.'

197. (346) *a.* The infinitive with *zu* is governed by three prepositions, *um*, 'in order to,' *ohne*, 'without,' *statt* or *anstatt*, 'instead of.' If the infin. has an object or other adjuncts, they stand between it and the preposition: thus, *anstatt zu sprechen*, 'instead of speaking,' *ohne mir ein Wort zu sagen*, 'without saying a word to me,' *um in Allem ihrem Rath zu folgen*, 'in order to follow their advice in everything.'

b. With other prepositions, when a similar expression is required, a *da* is used in composition with the preposition, and the infinitive follows after: thus, *sie waren nahe daran, auf ihn zu treten*, 'they were near to treading on him' (lit'ly, 'near to this—[namely,] to tread on him'). Sometimes, and necessarily when the action of the infinitive has a different actor (expressed in English by a possessive) from the subject of the preceding verb, a substantive clause, with *dass*, takes the place of the infinitive: thus, *sie drangen darauf, dass er sich rechts wenden sollte*, 'they insisted on his turning to the right.'

198. (348) Whatever depends on an infinitive regularly and usually comes before it, the infinitive standing at the end of its clause. And if one infinitive depends on another, the dependent one

comes before the other. Thus, *nach Hause gehen*, 'to go home,' *nach Hause gehen lassen*, 'to cause to go home.'

199. (349-56) *a.* The participles, or verbal adjectives, have in general the inflection and constructions of adjectives. Some words which are participles in form have assumed wholly the character of ordinary adjectives: *e.g.* *reizend*, 'charming,' *bedeutend*, 'important'; *gelehrt*, 'learned,' *besorgt*, 'anxious.'

b. But, except in the case of words like those last mentioned, the present participle is not used as predicate, and neither the present nor the past participle is compared, or (save in rare instances) used as adverb.

200. (357) Participial clauses (with present or perfect participle) are much less used in German than in English; ordinarily they are to be represented by full adverbial clauses, introduced by *da*, *indem*, *als*, *wenn*, etc. Thus, "not finding him, I went away" is *da ich ihn nicht fand, ging ich fort*; "having undressed, I went to bed" is *als ich mich ausgezogen hatte, ging ich zu Bett*; "walking uprightly, we walk surely" is *wenn wir aufrichtig wandeln, wandeln wir sicher*.

201. (359) *a.* After a verb of motion (*gehen*, *kommen*), a past participle is used instead of a present, to express the mode of motion: thus, *er kam angesprungen*, 'he came jumping along.'

b. A past participle is occasionally used in an imperative sense: thus, *den Rappen gezäumt*, '[have] the steed bridled'; *nur nicht lang gefragt*, 'only don't be long asking.'

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| die Aufgabe, =ben. task. | nachlaufen, <i>v. O.</i> run after. |
| befehlen, <i>v. O.</i> command, order. | neulich, <i>adv.</i> newly, lately. |
| begleiten, <i>v. N.</i> accompany. | ruhig, <i>adj.</i> quiet, restful. |
| begrüßen, <i>v. N.</i> greet. | schäumen, <i>v. N.</i> foam. |
| bestehen, <i>v. O.</i> persist, consist. | schwer, <i>adj.</i> heavy, difficult. |
| bewundern, <i>v. N.</i> admire. | spazieren fahren, <i>v. N.</i> take a drive. |
| darauf, <i>adv.</i> thereupon, upon it. | stillen, <i>v. U.</i> still, assuage. |
| der Dom, =mes, =me. cathedral. | das Theater, =r̄s, =r. theatre. |
| der Durst, =tes. thirst. | verstorbene, deceased. [plish. |
| das Getränk, =fes, =fe. drink, beverage. | vollenden, <i>v. N.</i> complete, accom- |
| Köln, Cologne (city). | vorbeigehen, <i>v. O.</i> go by, pass by. |
| der Kutscher, =ers, =r. coachman. | vorfahren, <i>v. O.</i> drive before, |
| der Lehrer, =rs, =r. teacher. | drive up. |
| lesen, <i>v. O.</i> read. | der Wagen, =ns, =n. wagon, carriage. |
| malen, <i>v. N.</i> paint. | zurückziehen, <i>v. O.</i> draw back. |

EXERCISE 35.

INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

- Das Lesen hat sie schon gelernt, aber das Schreiben ist ihr noch schwer.
- Ich helfe ihr immer ihre Aufgaben machen.
- Der Lehrer ließ mich zu ihm kommen, und befahl mir das Lied abzuschreiben.
- Karl, laß den Kutscher rufen und den Wagen vorfahren; ich möchte spazieren fahren.
- Das wird wohl schwer zu finden sein!
- Ich blieb stehen und sah sie bewundernd an; aber sie ging vorbei, ohne mich zu begrüßen.
- Anstatt ins Theater zu gehen, hat er sich zurückgezogen, um in seinem Zimmer ruhig arbeiten zu können.
- Er bestand darauf, uns nach Hause zu begleiten.
- Das schäumende Getränk hat uns den Durst gestillt.
- Der im Jahre 1248 angefangene Dom zu Köln ist neulich vollendet.
- In ihrem Zimmer sieht man noch das schön gemalte Bild des Verstorbenen.
- Er kam mir nachgelaufen.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| absent, <i>adj.</i> abwesend. | invite, <i>v.</i> einladen, <i>O.</i> |
| admire, <i>v.</i> bewundern. | leave, <i>v.</i> verlassen, <i>O.</i> |
| beloved, geliebt. | madman, der Wahnsinnige. |
| born, geboren. | next, <i>adj.</i> nächst. |
| bystanders, die Umstehenden. | present, <i>adj.</i> anwesend. |
| cause, <i>v.</i> lassen. | raise, <i>v.</i> aufheben, <i>O.</i> |
| Charles, Karl. | spring along, <i>v.</i> heranspringen, <i>O.</i> |
| charming, <i>adj.</i> reizend. | study, <i>v.</i> studieren, <i>N.</i> |
| coachman, Kutscher. | take a walk, <i>v.</i> spazieren gehen, <i>O.</i> |
| copy, <i>v.</i> abschreiben, <i>O.</i> | teach, <i>v.</i> lehren, <i>N.</i> |
| departed, verstorben. | threaten, <i>v.</i> drohen, <i>N.</i> |
| drive, <i>v.</i> fahren. | up and down, auf und ab. |
| forest, der Wald, =des, =älter. | why, <i>adv.</i> warum. |
| girl, das Mädchen, =ns, =n. | without, <i>prep.</i> ohne. |
| hateful, <i>adj.</i> gehaßt. | wood, der Wald, =des, =älter. |

EXERCISE 36.

1. He wanted to teach me to write, but I could not learn.
2. I caused the coachman to drive up and down, while I took a walk in the wood.
3. Studying is hateful to me.
4. It is hardly to be believed that she is already gone.
5. Charles helped me copy these letters.
6. She remained sitting while I spoke with her.
7. I invited her to go along, but she would (it) not.
8. Why did you leave me without saying anything?
9. I had to go into the next room, in order to speak with my friend.
10. She is a charming girl, and admired by all present.
11. The madman came springing along, threatening the bystanders with his raised knife.
12. Goethe, born in Frankfort in the year 1749, died at Weimar in 1832.
13. The departed was my beloved friend.
14. Following after him, I too went through the forest.
15. He being absent, I would not go into the house.

ORDER OF THE SENTENCE.

[Many of the rules of arrangement have been given above, in connection with the Exercises ; but the whole subject is presented here, for reference, in a more systematic way. It is an important part of thorough instruction in German to analyze the sentence correctly, pointing out the character and relation of the clauses.]

202. (441) There are three modes of arranging the German sentence : 1. the normal, or regular ; 2. the inverted ; 3. the transposed. In the first, the personal verb immediately follows the subject ; in the second, it immediately precedes the subject ; in the third, it is removed to the very end of the clause. The first and second belong to independent clauses, the third to dependent clauses, whether these be substantive, adjective, or adverbial.

203. (430, 442) *a.* The NORMAL order is : 1. the subject (the simple subject and its modifiers) ; .. the simple predicate or personal verb ; 3. the various modifiers of the predicate ; and (among these), last, 4. the non-personal part or parts of the verb (if there be such)—namely, separable prefix, participle, infinitive.

b. If more non-personal parts of the verb than one are present, they follow one another in their order as here mentioned : namely, prefix before participle or infinitive, and participle before infinitive.

c. Among the various modifiers of the predicate (3, above), a personal pronoun usually comes first, an accusative object precedes a genitive, but follows a dative ; an adverb of time comes before one of place or manner ; a predicate noun or adjective comes last.

Examples are: *er schickt*, 'he sends'; *er schickt mir ein Buch zurück*, 'he sends me back a book'; *mein Freund hat mir ein Buch geschickt*, 'my friend has sent me a book'; *er wird mir ein Buch schicken*, 'he will send me a book'; *mein lieber alter Freund Wilhelm wird mir mein ihm geliehenes Buch recht bald nach Hause zurückgeschickt haben*, 'my dear old friend William will very soon have sent back home to me my book, lent to him.'

c. Nothing is allowed to come between the personal verb and its subject except sometimes *aber*, 'but' or 'however,' and, quite rarely, a parenthetically used word or phrase.

204. (431-3, 443) a. The INVERTED order is the same with the normal, except that the subject comes next after the personal verb, instead of next before.

b. The inverted order is used in the following cases (arranged in nearly the order of their frequency): 1. when any part of the predicate is put, instead of the subject, at the head of the sentence; 2. in an interrogative sentence, or when a question is asked; 3. in a conditional sentence, or to give the meaning of 'if'; 4. in an optative or imperative sentence, or when a command or desire is expressed; 5. for impressiveness, with the personal verb first, and usually with *doch* or *ja*, 'surely,' somewhere after it.

Examples are: 1. *mir hat er ein Buch geschickt*, *ein Buch hat er mir geschickt*, *geschickt hat er mir ein Buch*, 'he has sent me a book' (with varying emphasis, the word placed first having a stress laid upon it);

2. *hat er mir das Buch geschickt*, 'has he sent me the book?' *wird er es mir zurückschicken*, 'will he send it back to me?' 3. *schickt er mir das Buch, so thut er wohl*, 'if he sends me the book, he does well'; 4. *schicke er mir das Buch*, 'let him send me the book!' 5. *hat er mir doch das Buch geschickt*, 'surely he has sent me the book.'

c. Only the general connectives, meaning 'and' 'but' 'for' 'or' (178), are allowed to stand at the beginning of the sentence without giving it the inverted order.

d. In an inverted sentence, a personal pronoun as object often comes between the personal verb and the subject, when the latter is a noun: thus, *hat mir mein Freund das Buch geschickt*, 'has my friend sent me the book?'

e. An adverbial dependent clause, if preceding the main clause, causes the inversion of the latter, just as a simple adverb would do: thus, *als ich das Buch verlangte, schickte er es mir zurück*, 'when I desired the book, he sent it back to me.'

f. If an interrogative word is itself the subject, or belongs to the subject, it of course stands before the verb: thus, *wer hat mir das Buch geschickt*, 'who has sent me the book?' *wessen Buch ist mir geschickt worden*, 'whose book has been sent to me?'

✓ 205. (434-9, 444) a. The TRANSPOSED order is the same with the normal, except that the personal verb is removed to the end of the whole clause.

b. This order is usual in dependent clauses—that it is to say, in such as, being introduced by a subordinating word (relative pronoun or conjunction), are made to enter into the structure of the sentence in which they occur with the value of a part of speech: namely, of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

c. A substantive clause, or one having the value of a noun, is introduced by *dass*, 'that,' *ob*, 'whether,' or a compound relative pronoun or particle; it is oftenest the subject or object of a verb: thus, *ob er mir das Buch schickt oder nicht, ist mir einerlei*, 'whether he sends me the book or not is indifferent to me'; *ich weiß, dass er es mir geschickt hat*, 'I know that he has sent it to me.'

d. An adjective clause is introduced by a relative pronoun or particle; it belongs to and qualifies a noun: thus, *das Buch, welches er mir geschickt hat, ist hier*, 'the book that he has sent me is here'; *der Ort, wohin er es schickte*, 'the place whither he sent it.'

e. An adverbial clause is introduced by a subordinating conjunction (180), of place, time, manner, cause, purpose, condition, etc.; it qualifies usually a verb, sometimes an adjective or an adverb: thus, *als er mir das Buch schickte*, 'when he sent me the book'; *weil er es mir geschickt hat*, 'because he has sent it to me'; *wenn er es mir zurück schicken will*, 'if he will send it back to me.'

f. In a transposed sentence (as in an inverted one: 204 d.) a personal pronoun as object is sometimes put before the subject if the latter is a noun: thus, *ob mir mein Freund das Buch geschickt hat*, 'whether my friend has sent me the book?'

g. When the clause ends with more than one infinitive, the transposed verb is usually (and always, if the second infinitive is one used in place of a participle: 148) put next before instead of after them: thus, *weil er es mir nicht hat schicken wollen*, 'because he has not wanted to send it to me.'

h. In a dependent clause, the transposed auxiliary of a perfect or pluperfect tense is often omitted, and sometimes the trans-

posed copula or form of the verb *sein*, 'be': thus, *ob er mir das Buch geschickt*, 'whether he *has* sent me the book'; *wenn das Buch zu haben*, 'if the book *is* to be had.'

i. A clause does not take the transposed order unless it is formally dependent—that is, introduced by a word (relative or conjunction) that shows its dependent character. A clause logically dependent is not seldom met with in the other forms of arrangement: thus, especially, a clause in indirect discourse (192), and one in which the inverted arrangement is used to give the sense of 'if': thus, *er sagt, er habe mir das Buch schon geschickt*, 'he says he *has* sent me the book *already*' (but *dass er mir das Buch schon geschickt habe*); *er thut, als hätte er es mir schon geschickt*, 'he acts as if he *had* sent it to me *already*' (but *als ob er es mir schon geschickt hätte*).

206. (445) The rules of arrangement are not always strictly observed, even in prose, and their violation is especially frequent in antiquated and in low style; while in poetry they are still more often neglected.

DERIVATION.

207. (398-9) *a.* In German, as elsewhere, words are derived from other words especially by the help of suffixes, also by prefixes, and by, or along with, changes in the form of the primitive word.

(400) *b.* Changes in the primitive oftenest affect the vowel, and are mainly of two kinds: 1. modification (*Umlaut*: 10-13), or the change of *a*, *o*, *u*,

au, to ä, ö, ü, äu respectively; 2. variation (Ablaut), or a change like those seen in the principal parts of verbs of the Old conjugation (135).

208. (404-6) *a.* Verbs are derived from other verbs especially by means of the inseparable prefixes (see 167); but also sometimes by internal changes: as fällen, 'fell,' legen, 'lay,' setzen, 'set,' from fallen, 'fall,' liegen, 'lie,' sitzen, 'sit,' respectively; and in a few cases by suffixes, as lächeln, 'smile,' from lachen, 'laugh,' folgern, 'infer,' from folgen, 'follow.'

b. Verbs from other languages (chiefly French) are apt to take the ending iren or ieren: thus, marschieren, 'march,' regieren, 'rule'; and this ending is even found on a few words of native origin, as schattieren, 'shade.'

c. Verbs are very commonly derived from nouns and adjectives (rarely from other parts of speech), either with the help of inseparable prefixes (see 167), or without any additions: thus, hausen, 'dwell' (Haus, 'house'), altern, 'age' (Alter, 'age'), ändern, 'change' (ander, 'other'), stärken, 'strengthen' (stark, 'strong'), empören, 'arouse' (empor, 'aloft').

209. (408) *a.* Nouns are derived from verb-roots, often with variation of the radical vowel, often with brief obscure endings, as e, te, t: thus, Band, 'volume,' Bund, 'bond' (binden, 'bind'); Gabe, 'gift' (geben, 'give'), Fahrt, 'passage' (fahren, 'go'); often with more distinct endings, of definable meaning.

(409–10) *b.* Nouns are also derived from other nouns and from adjectives, chiefly by added suffixes, with or without modification of the vowel of the primitive.

c. The principal suffixes by which nouns are formed are as follows :

er makes nouns denoting an agent, chiefly from verbs : thus, *Geber*, 'giver,' *Bäcker*, 'baker'; also from nouns, as *Gärtner*, 'gardener'; and from names of places, as *Londoner*, 'a Londoner.'

el makes nouns denoting an instrument : thus, *Deckel*, 'cover,' *Flügel*, 'wing.'

ung makes feminine abstract nouns from verbs : thus, *Führung*, 'leading,' *Neigung*, 'inclination.'

niß makes neuter (sometimes feminine) abstracts from verbs and a few adjectives : thus, *Zeugniß*, 'testimony,' *Finsterniß*, 'darkness.'

sal, **sel** have nearly the same office with **niß** : thus, *Schicksal*, 'fate,' *Räthsel*, 'riddle.'

e, with modification of vowel, forms feminine abstracts from adjectives : thus, *Güte*, 'goodness,' *Tiefe*, 'depth.'

heit, **keit** do the same : thus, *Freiheit*, 'freedom,' *Höflichkeit*, 'courtesy'; and before **keit**, **ig** is often added to the adjective : thus, *Süßigkeit*, 'sweetness.'

shaft forms feminine nouns, usually from other nouns : thus, *Freundschaft*, 'friendship,' *Landschaft*, 'landscape.'

thum makes nouns, mostly neuter, from other nouns and from a few adjectives : thus, *Königthum*, 'kingdom,' *Reichthum*, 'wealth.'

chen, **lein** make neuter diminutives from nouns : thus, *Häuschen*, 'little house,' *Bächlein*, 'brooklet.'

in makes feminine from masculine appellations of persons : thus, *Hirtin*, 'shepherdess,' *Königin*, 'queen,' *Berlinerin*, 'woman of Berlin.'

ei (sometimes **erei**) makes feminine abstracts from nouns and verbs, sometimes with disparaging implication : thus, *Jägerei*, 'sportsmanship,' *Schmeichelei*, 'flattery,' *Kinderei*, 'childishness,' *Schreiberti*, 'scribblings.'

210. (411) Nouns are sometimes made by prefixes, of which the principal are as follows:

ge makes usually neuter nouns (a few masculines and feminines), mostly collectives or frequentatives, from nouns and verbs: thus, *Gebirg*, 'mountain-range,' *Gehör*, 'hearing,' *Gespräch*, 'conversation.'

miß is like our *mis* or *dis*: thus, *Mißgriff*, 'mistake,' *Mißgunst*, 'disfavor.'

un is, as in English, the negative prefix: thus, *Un dank*, 'ingratitude,' *Unsinn*, 'nonsense.'

ur adds the meaning of originality or primitiveness, or is sometimes intensive: thus, *Urwelt*, 'primitive world,' *Urbild*, 'archetype.'

erz (our *arch*) is intensive: thus, *Erzbischof*, 'archbishop,' *Erzdieb*, 'archthief.'

211. (413-6) *a.* A few adjectives come from verb-roots, with internal change only: thus, *bräch*, 'fallow' (*brechen*, 'break up'), *flücf*, 'fledged' (*fliegen*, 'fly'). But most derivative adjectives are made from verbs and nouns (much less often from other adjectives) by means of suffixes.

b. The most important adjective suffixes are:

bar is nearly like our *able*: thus, *eßbar*, 'eatable,' *dienstbar*, 'serviceable.'

en, **ern** denote material: thus, *golden*, 'golden,' *eichen*, 'oaken,' *bleiern*, 'leaden.'

er. Nouns made with this suffix from names of places are often used as indeclinable adjectives: thus, *die Londoner Straßen*, 'the streets of London,' *Berliner Waaren*, 'Berlin wares.'

haft has a value like that of our suffixes *ous*, *ful*, *ly*, etc.: thus, *tugendhaft*, 'virtuous,' *sündhaft*, 'sinful,' *leibhaft*, 'bodily.'

ig is usually like the corresponding English *y*: thus, *mächtig*, 'mighty,' *blutig*, 'bloody.' It makes adjectives from words of very various kind, often from particles: thus, *übrig*, 'remaining' (*über*, 'over'), *abermalig*, 'repeated' (*abermals*, 'again').

isch is like our *ish*: thus, *spanisch*, 'Spanish,' *kindisch*, 'childish.'

Lei, with *er* before it, forms indeclinable adjectives signifying 'of such kind': thus, *einerlei*, 'of one sort,' *allerlei*, 'of all sorts.'

Lich corresponds in the main with our *like*, *ly*: thus, *männlich*, 'manly,' *jährlich*, 'yearly'; also *röthlich*, 'reddish,' *unfähiglich*, 'unspeakable.'

Sam is our *some*, in such words as *heilsam*, 'wholesome.'

Los, voll, reich, jach, falt or *fältig*, *artig*, etc., form classes of compounds rather than of derivatives: thus, *endlos*, 'endless,' *leidvoll*, 'sorrowful,' *liebreich*, 'rich in charm,' *dreifach* or *dreifältig*, 'threefold,' *fremdartig*, 'of strange fashion.'

c. Adjectives are made with the same prefixes as nouns (210): thus, *gewiß*, 'certain,' *mißgünstig*, 'grudging,' *unklar*, 'unclear,' *uralt*, 'very old,' *erzäumig*, 'extremely stupid.'

COMPOUND WORDS.

212. (419) a. Compounds are much more numerous and more freely formed in German than in English, and are sometimes of considerable length and complexity.

b. If two compounds having the same final member are used coördinately, the final of the first is often omitted: thus, *alle Sonn- und Festtage*, 'all the Sundays and holidays,' *die baum- und quellenseere Einöde*, 'the treeless and waterless desert.'

213. (420) Verbs compounded with separable and inseparable prefixes have already been treated (159-68). A noun or adjective or adverb is also sometimes joined to a verb, and treated usually like a separable prefix (rarely, like an inseparable): thus, *handhaben*, 'handle,' *wahrsagen*, 'prophesy,' *wohlthun*, 'benefit' (*wohlzuthun*, that *wohl*, *wohlgethan*, etc.).

214. (421-2) a. Compound nouns are generally composed of a noun and a preceding qualifying

word—oftenest another noun, but sometimes an adjective or verbal root or particle: thus, *Schulbuch*, 'schoolbook,' *Baumwolle*, 'cotton' ('tree-wool'), *Eichbaum*, 'oak-tree'; *Vollmond*, 'full moon,' *Singvogel*, 'singing bird,' *Mitmensch*, 'fellow-creature.'

b. A noun as former member of a compound not infrequently takes a plural or a genitive form, or even sometimes assumes a genitive § that does not belong to it: thus, *Bilderbuch*, 'picture-book,' *Landsmann*, 'countryman,' *Geburtstag*, 'birthday.'

c. The gender and declension are (with a few exceptions) those of the final member. The former member has the accent.

d. More irregular and unusual are such as add the implication of having or possessing, as *fahlkopf*, 'bald-head' ('one having a bald head'), *Viereck*, 'square' ('four-cornered'); or a verb-root with limiting word, as *Taugenichts*, 'good-for-nothing,' *Nehraus*, 'closing dance' ('turn out').

215. (423-4) *a.* Compound adjectives are always made up of an adjective with a preceding qualifying word. They are inflected like simple adjectives. The accent is on the former member of the compound. Thus, *hellblau*, 'bright blue,' *eisfalt*, 'ice-cold,' *riesengroß*, 'gigantic,' *finderlos*, 'childless.'

b. Many adjectives are made by adding the ending *ig* to a noun-compound not used alone as such: thus, *vierfüßig*, 'four-footed,' *großherzig*, 'great-hearted.'

ENGLISH AND GERMAN.

216. (447-52) *a.* The English and German are related languages—that is, they have descended from the same original language, by processes of gradual change and divarication such as are seen going on in all languages even at the present time.

b. Both are members (dialects) of the Germanic or Teutonic branch of the great Indo-European or Aryan family (embracing also Slavonic, Celtic, Latin, Greek, Persian, Sanskrit); the English belongs to the Low-German, the German to the High-German, division of the branch.

217. (453-60) Hence the very numerous and striking correspondences that are seen between German and English words. The differences in form between these corresponding words are in part too various and irregular to be briefly set forth; but in part they depend upon a certain law of change widely known as "Grimm's Law," by which,

to English *th*, *d*, *t*, *f*, *b*, *p*, *h*, *g*, *k* correspond in German *d*, *t*, *f*, *b*, *p*, *h*, *g*, *k*.

Examples are: *das* that, *Bruder* brother, *Tag* day, *tief* deep, *zu* to, *aus* out, *Weib* wife, *sieben* seven, *auf* up, *helfen* help—and so on.

THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

218. (462-9) The German, in nearly its present form, goes back to about the time of Martin Luther (after 1500 A. D.), by whose writings, and espe-

cially by whose Bible-version, the main impulse was given toward making it the general literary language of the German people. It is called the New High-German (*neuhochdeutsch*) language, to distinguish it from the earlier dialects by which it was preceded—the Middle High-German (12th to 15th centuries), and the Old High-German (8th to 11th centuries).

SELECTED SENTENCES,

FOR PRACTICE IN APPLYING THE RULES OF THE GRAMMAR.

1. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. Das Auge ist des Leibes Licht. 2. Die Lilie ist die Zierde des Gartens. 3. Gold und Silber sind das Blut des Staates. 4. Uebung macht den Meister. 5. Die Schwalben hängen ihre Nester an¹ die Wände der Häuser. 6. Wir sind eines Herzens, eines Bluts. 7. Meines Vaters Haus steht am¹ Ufer des Flusses, unweit von der Straße. 8. Der Löwe ist König der Thiere. 9. In der Kunst ist die Form Alles, der Stoff gilt² nichts. 10. Die Noth ist die Mutter der Künste, aber auch die Großmutter der Laster. 11. Die Luft erschallt von³ dem Gesang der Vögel. 12. Die Blätter der Bäume fallen ab.⁴ 13. Gebet dem Kaiser was des Kaisers ist. 14. Des Lebens Mai blüht einmal und nicht wieder. 15. Die Natur verlieh dem Menschen Vernunft. 16. Die Wiege, das Bett und der Sarg sind Ruhestätten. 17. Der selbe⁵ vermählte sich mit Johanna, der Tochter Ferdinands des Katholischen von Aragonien. 18. Der jüngere Sohn Ferdinands ward⁶ mit Anna, der Tochter des Königs Vladislaw von Ungarn und Böhmen, vermählt. 19. Albrecht des IV. Sohn, Albrecht V., ward Kaiser Sigmunds Schwiegersohn und Erbe. 20. Die frommen Lieder Paul Gerhardts und Johann Heermanns erklangen noch, und trösteten das Volk in seiner Leidenszeit.

¹ 175. ² Gelten, 136a. ³ With, ⁴ Abfallen, 161. ⁵ 95. ⁶ Ward vermaht, 149.

2. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Grün ist des Lebens goldener Baum. 2. Ein gutes Wort findet eine gute Stelle. 3. Hunde sind treue Freunde ihrer Herren. 4. Ein gutes Buch ist ein wahrer Schatz. 5. Das ganze Land ist ein wahrer Garten. 6. In voller

Blüthe steht der Apfelbaum, nur weiß und roth. 7. Aus lauter kleinen Dingen besteht das Leben. 8. Des Mondes Strahl malt den Berg mit mattem Glanze. 9. Das neue Jahr steht vor der¹ Thür. 10. Ein erster Versuch ist selten ein Meisterstück. 11. Wo reichen Leuten² das Herz sitzt, haben arme Leute keinen Stein. 12. Man streut weißen, feinen Sand auf¹ den Fußboden vor einem Festtage. 13. Der Mann ist schön, doch hat er falschen Sinn.² 14. Gieb dem armen Sünder Ruh', Friede diesem müden Herz. 15. Welch einen Engel hattet ihr gebildet! 16. Wenige dürre Früchte gediehen. 17. Du im Himmel! hilf³ mir⁴ armen, schwarzen Mann.

¹175. ²184d. ³Helfen, 136a. ⁴184.

3. ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS AND ADVERBS AND COMPARED.

1. Der bunte Regenbogen ist das schönste Kind der Sonne. 2. Die Nachtigall singt am schönsten von allen Vögeln, und sie singt um Mitternacht schöner als zu allen anderen Seiten. 3. Der längste Tag ist hier etwa um 8 Stunden länger als der kürzeste. 4. Grüß'¹ dir, schönstes, liebstes Land! 5. Vom² Himmel fordert man die schönsten Stunden und von der Erde jede höchste Lust. 6. Die Sonne wendet an³ jedes kleinste Blümchen ihre ganze Kraft. 7. Der fruchtbarste Kopf schreibt sich leer. 8. Die schönsten Bilder sind weiter nichts als ein geistiges Licht in³ die Seele. 9. Der Reiche kaufst vergebens seine Freuden; der Hohe steht so hohl wie oft der Arme. Der Gute hat allein den Lebensquell in sich. 10. Man freut sich über³ das Geschehene, an dem Gegenwärtigen, auf das Künftige. 11. Die Lerche, als Morgenbote, schwingt sich in das Blaue der Luft. 12. Er bleibt zu Hause, Wichtiges zu thun.⁴ 13. Weise erdenken die neuen Gedanken und Narren verbreiten sie. 14. Ja, dann kommt noch etwas Besseres, noch weit Schöneres!

¹ Greetings, hail. ²49. ³175. ⁴194a.

4. PRONOUNS.

1. Ich habe ihm Alles erzählt, was wir entdeckt haben.
 2. Wer ihn sah, der schätzte ihn nach seinem wahren Werthe.
 3. Erziehung giebt dem Menschen nichts, was er nicht aus sich selber haben könnte.¹ 4. Erzähle mir denn Alles und ich werde dir² helfen, so weit ich es³ mit meinen schwachen Kräften vermag. 5. Geben Sie mir Ihre Hand. 6. Wer den Willen thut meines Vaters im⁴ Himmel, derselbe ist mein Bruder. 7. Es war einmal eine Frau, die ein einziges Töchterchen hatte. 8. „Wer ist da?“ fragte er. „Ich bin es,“ antwortete die Königin. 9. Sein Richterstuhl ist nicht der meine. 10. Der Frost dringt mir durch alle Knochen. 11. Der ist es; das ist er; der rettete die Königin. 12. Das war eine erschreckliche Fahrt. 13. Welcher ist es, den du am meisten liebst? 14. Zu wem wollen⁵ Sie? 15. Was habe ich hier? 16. Was für Berge, für Wüsten, was für Ströme trennen uns? 17. Sie sah sich nun mit dem Manne verbunden, dessen Liebe und Treue sie kannte, dem sie vom Herzen zugethan war. 18. Woher wir kommen und wohin wir gehen, wissen wir nicht. 19. Wer A sagt, muß auch B sagen. 20. Es ist nur Eins, was uns retten kann. 21. Sechs tragen die Bahre, worauf der Sarg steht. 22. Wenn man auf dem Fensterbrette saß, sah man nur ein Stückchen blauen⁶ Himmels. 23. Man ist nie, wo man sein soll. 24. Manch bunte Blumen sind an dem Strand. 25. Ich könnte ihm recht viel Böses dafür thun. 26. Es kostete mich gar nichts.

¹ might. ²184. ³146. ⁴49. ⁵115b.

5. NUMERALS.

1. Nur der erste Schritt ist es, der da¹ kostet. 2. Ein Leib, ein Herz und eine Seele! 3. Das Buch hat eine zweite, dann eine dritte, — jetzt sogar schon eine zwölftse Auflage erlebt. 4. Diese Dame hat einen Ohrring von ungefähr 3,400 Thaler Werth verloren. 5. Der ältere der beiden Männer hatte 67 Thaler in der Tasche, der jüngere war nur

¹ Omit da in translating.

mit 10 versehen. 6. Am 20ten Februar 1870, gegen 11 Uhr des Abends, starb der große Held. 7. Die letzte Ausgabe der Werke von Schiller ist in zwölf Bänden erschienen und jeder Band hat ungefähr 400 bis 500 Seiten. 8. Reitet sieben Tag und sieben Nacht. 9. Ich gebe jedem dreißig Acker Landes. 10. Die eine will sich von der anderen trennen. 11. Am 6ten Juli 1630 landete Gustav Adolph mit 13,000 Mann.

6. VERBS OF OLD AND NEW CONJUGATION.

1. Er geht, kommt, entfernt sich, und kommt wieder. 2. Saul ging aus, seines Vaters Eselinnen zu suchen,¹ und fand ein Königreich. 3. Suche immer den höhern Standpunkt, unter welchem alle kleinen Leiden und Freuden verschwinden. 4. Alle Angstlichkeit kommt vom Teufel, der Muth und die Freudigkeit kommt von Gott. 5. Ich habe genossen das irdische Glück; ich habe gelebt und geliebet. 6. Was du gelernt,² begleitet dich zeitlebens, wohin du gehst, und gibt dir neue Sinne für die Welt. 7. Alles ist so gekommen, wie ich voraus gesagt habe. 8. Man preist den dramatischen Dichter, der es versteht, Thränen zu entlocken. Dies Talent hat auch die kümmerlichste Zwiebel; mit dieser theilt er seinen Ruhm. 9. Aus lauter kleinen Dingen besteht das Leben. Darum warte nicht mit deiner Weisheit bis große Dinge mit Posaunen kommen; an jedes wende du die ganze Seele.

¹ 194a. ² 205h.

7. MODAL AUXILIARIES.

1. Was man will, das kann man. Bei dem Menschen ist kein Ding unmöglich. 2. Was soll aus mir werden, wenn du nicht mehr da bist? 3. Sie soll eine wunderliche Person sein; das sieht¹ man ihr gleich an.¹ 4. Gut, daß ich Sie treffe. Ich wollte eben zu Ihnen, um Sie um eine kleine Gefälligkeit zu bitten.² 5. Die Menschen lieben lernen,³ das

¹ Ansehen. ² 197a. ³ 193.

ist das einzige wahre Glück. 6. Mein Unglück sollt' euch heilig sein, wenn es¹ mein königliches Haupt nicht ist. 7. Wer recht weiß, was vor unserer Zeit geschehen ist, wird auch für unsere Zeit den besten Rath geben können. 8. Ich kann und will es länger nicht dulden. 9. Ganz gewiß wird sie den Major nicht haben bezahlen können. 10. Heiß' mich nicht reden, heiß' mich schweigen. 11. Verachtung hab' ich nie ertragen können. 12. Ich möchte gern arm sein. 13. Das möchte der Baum gar nicht hören. 14. Ich darf kaum hoffen, daß Sie mir² vergeben können.

¹87b. ²184.

8. PASSIVE, IMPERSONAL, AND REFLEXIVE VERBS.

1. Wißt ihr nicht, wohin sie geführt wurden? Seid ihr ihnen¹ nicht begegnet? 2. Er wurde auf das schändlichste mißhandelt. 3. Durch Zorn und Leidenschaft wird noch gar nichts gethan; nur durch festen, hellen Entschluß. 4. Dann war keine Gnade; sie mußten niederknien und das Haupt ward ihnen² abgeschlagen. 5. Mohammed wurde ums Jahr 570 zu Mekka geboren. 6. Deshalb wunderten und freuten sie sich sehr über die schönen Äpfel. 7. Der sechste Tag der Schöpfung neigte sich zu seinem Ende. 8. Da öffnet sich behend ein zweites Thor. 9. Es hagelte schwer. 10. Es gibt kein so hartherziges Geschöpf, wie ein Krämer. 11. Es war mir, als lebten wir alle noch. 12. Ergeht's euch wohl, so denkt an mich. 13. Wie weh wird mir; wie brennt meine alte Wunde! 14. Es ging alles ganz vortrefflich. 15. Tief dauert mich euer. 16. Gegen Abend ward nach ihm gefragt. 17. Es lohnt sich nicht zu ändern, wo man nicht bessern kann. 18. Alle Menschen werden in ihren Hoffnungen getäuscht, in ihren Erwartungen betrogen.

¹184. ²82b. ³90.

9. COMPOUND VERBS, SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

1. Ein Fremder kehrte in das Wirthshaus ein, um da zu übernachten.¹ 2. Die Schuld ist von dem Verbrecher eingestanden und bekannt worden. 3. Er stimmte dieser Bemerkung kräftig bei. 4. Von diesen Rosen will ich dir die allerschönsten² aussuchen. 5. Die Post ist vor einer Stunde angekommen und der Briefträger hat die Briefe schon ausgetragen. 6. Man kann ein Gedicht aus einer Sprache in³ eine andere übersetzen, aber es ist unmöglich den Geist des Gedichtes gänzlich zu übertragen. 7. Wenn einer mitten im Schreiben⁴ aufhört, so ist es ihm schwer, den Faden des Gedankens wieder aufzugreifen. 8. Klage nicht um das was dir Gott entzieht. 9. Der Mond ging auf und das Heer der Sterne trat hervor in heiterem Glanze.

¹ 197a. ² 82d. ³ 175. ⁴ 193.

10. SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF DECLENSION.

1. Fernando erwartete des frohen Augenblickes. 2. Gott erbarme¹ sich des Landes! 3. Er achtete nicht der warmen Sonne und der frischen Luft. 4. Ich schäme mich der Unerschaffenheit und meiner Jugend nicht. 5. Ottolie erinnerte sich jedes Wortes, was gesprochen ward. 6. Er setzte traurigen Herzens seinen Weg fort und suchte weiter keines Menschen Gesellschaft. 7. Eines Tages im Zenze saß Salomo der Jüngling unter den Palmen im Garten seines Vaters. 8. Dem Nächsten muß man helfen. 9. Dein Vater dient dem Könige. 10. Die Gebilde der Nacht weichen dem tagenden² Licht. 11. Meister Johann, lehre ihm auch die beiden anderen schönen Künste. 12. Mache nicht schnell jemand deinen Freund. 13. Der Zwang der Zeiten machte mich zu ihrem Gegner. 14. Bin ich die ritterlichen Rechte nicht werth? 15. Er redete den ganzen Abend und den anderen

¹ 191b. ² 199.

Morgen kein Wort mit ihm. 16. Der König und die junge Königin lebten in Lust und Freude ein ganzes Jahr lang. 17. Es regnete den ganzen Tag. 18. Dieses gesagt, entblößte der redliche Vater die Scheitel.

11. SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

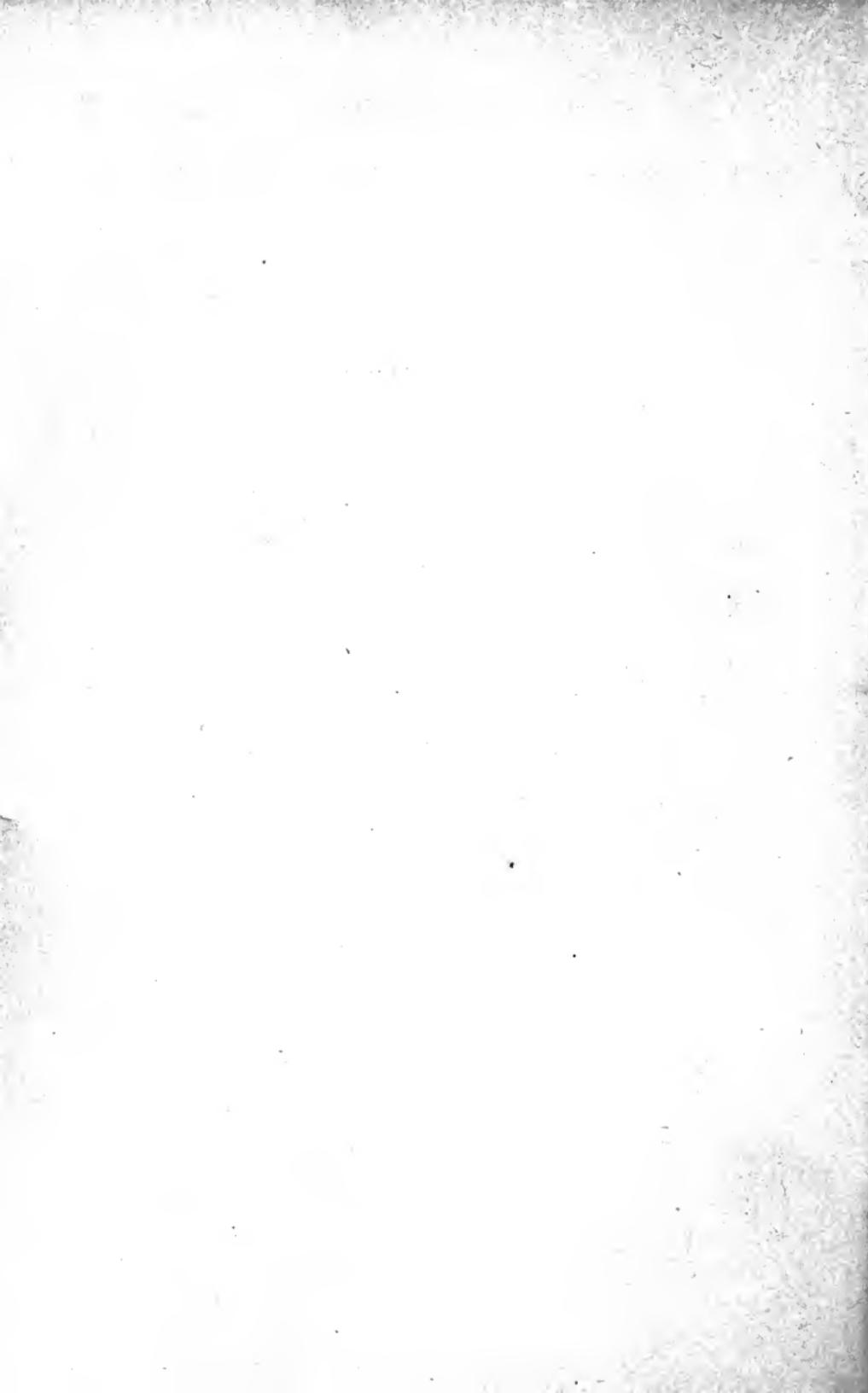
1. Und wie er sitzt und wie er lauscht, theilt sich die Fluth empor. 2. Jetzt laß mich los, ich komme bald zurück. 3. Sie hatten keine Furcht vor Heino, denn sie kannten ihn schon lange. 4. „Es wird wohl Geld im Koffer sein,” dachten die Leute. 5. Mit königlichen Gütern segne dich die Göttin! 6. Hätte ich dich früher so gerecht erkannt, es wäre Vieles ungeschehen geblieben. 7. Was wäre aus mir geworden, hättet ihr mich nicht aufgenommen? 8. Glücklicher wäre auch ich, wenn ich nach Asien gezogen wäre. 9. Es hieß, er verlange nicht zu wissen, ob er es dürfe, sondern ob er es müsse. 10. „Ah,” seufzte Erin, „daß du eine Sterbliche wärest, oder daß ich wäre wie du!“ 11. Als er merkte, daß er ein Mohr war, sagte er, er sei ein vornehmer Herr und wolle ihn in seinen Dienst nehmen. Er solle nichts weiter zu thun bekommen, als hinten auf seinem Wagen zu stehen, wenn er mit seiner Frau spazieren führe, damit man gleich sähe, daß vornehme Leute kämen. 12. O, daß sie ewig grünen¹ bliebe, die schöne Zeit der jungen Liebe!

¹ 196.

12. INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

1. O wachsen, wachsen, groß und alt werden, das ist doch das einzige Schöne in dieser Welt, dachte der Baum. 2. Da merkte die Frau wohl, daß das Betteln schwer sei. 3. Ich mag und will nicht glauben, daß mich der Max verlassen kann. 4. Was gelten soll, muß werken und muß dienen. 5. Schnell wirst du die Nothwendigkeit verschwinden, und Recht und Unrecht sich verwandeln sehen. 6. Ich will nicht

einen Menschen, an dessen Schuld ich nicht glaube, kalten Blutes tödten lassen. 7. Ich muß betteln gehen; der liebe Gott will es so haben. 8. Vor seinem Tode ist Niemand glücklich zu preisen. 9. Es ist dem Menschen leichter und geläufiger zu schmeicheln als zu loben. 10. Der Bettel fiel, ohne von ihm bemerkt zu werden, auf den Boden. 11. O, wäre ich doch auch groß genug, um über das Meer hinfahren zu können! 12. Mit großer Freude empfing der siegende Kaiser seinen siegenden Sohn. 13. Er glaubte in seinem Leben nichts reizenderes gesehen zu haben als ihr halb verwundertes, halb lächelndes, von dem Morgenroth rosig beleuchtetes, feines Gesichtchen. 14. Der alte Mann sah kopfschüttelnd vor sich nieder. 15. An einen Zweig hängten sie kleine Netze, ausgeschnitten aus farbigem Papier. 16. Aus seiner Höh' kommt das leichte Reh ins tiefe Gras gesprungen.



VOCABULARY.

GERMAN-ENGLISH.

ABBREVIATIONS.

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>accus.</i> | accusative. | <i>n.</i> | neuter noun. |
| <i>adj.</i> | adjective. | <i>N.</i> | New conjugation. |
| <i>adv.</i> | adverb. | <i>num.</i> | numeral. |
| <i>art.</i> | article. | <i>O.</i> | Old conjugation. |
| <i>conj.</i> | conjunction. | <i>pers.</i> | personal. |
| <i>dat.</i> | dative. | <i>pl.</i> | plural. |
| <i>dem.</i> | demonstrative. | <i>poss.</i> | possessive. |
| <i>ex.</i> | exercise. | <i>ppl.</i> | past participle. |
| <i>f.</i> | feminine noun. | <i>prep.</i> | preposition. |
| <i>impers.</i> | impersonal. | <i>pron.</i> | pronoun. |
| <i>indecl.</i> | indeclinable. | <i>reflex.</i> | reflexive. |
| <i>interrog.</i> | interrogative. | <i>rel.</i> | relative. |
| <i>irreg.</i> | irregular. | <i>v.</i> | verb. |
| <i>m.</i> | masculine noun. | | |

EXPLANATIONS.

Verbs of the Old conjugation, and of the New if irregular, are so noted (by an added *O.*, or *N.* *irreg.*, respectively). Their forms are to be sought in the List of Irregular Verbs. Verbs taking *sein* as auxiliary have an *s* added after them.

Nouns have the sign of their gender appended, and the endings of their genitive singular (except of feminines) and nominative plural.

Adverbs in *-ly* derived from adjectives and having the same form as the adjectives (79) are not separately entered.

Figures in parentheses refer to the Grammar.

Abend, *m.* =*ds*, =*de*. evening.
 aber, *conj.* but.
 absaffen, *v.* *O.* f. fall off, fall down.
 abreisen, *v.* *N.* f. journey away.
 abschlagen, *v.* *O.* refuse.
 abschreiben, *v.* *O.* copy.
 abziehen, *v.* *O.* draw off, take off.
 ach! ah! alas!
 achten, *v.* *N.* prize, notice.
 Acker, *m.* =*rs*, *Aecker*. cultivated field, tilled land, acre.
 Albrecht, Albert.
 all, *pron. and adj.* all, entire, or every, each; *alles*, everything, all.
 allein, *adv.* alone.
 allgemein, *adj.* general.
 als, *conj.* as, than.
 alt, *adj.* old.
 am = an dem.
 Amerika, America.
 an, *prep.* at, on, in.
 ander, *adj.* other, else.
 ändern, *v.* *N.* change, alter.
 anfangen, *v.* *O.* begin.
 anfangs, *adv.* in the beginning.
 angenehm, *adj.* pleasant.
 Angstlichkeit, *f.* anxiety, timidity.
 ankleiden, *v.* *N.* put clothes upon, clothe, dress.
 ankommen, *v.* *O.* f. to arrive.
 ansehen, *v.* *O.* look at; (*with accus. and dat.*) see to belong to, perceive in.
 anstatt, *prep.* instead.
 antworten, *v.* *N.* answer.
 anvertrauen, *v.* *N.* confide.
 anziehen, *v.* *O.* draw on, put on.
 Apfel, *m.* =*ls*, *Aepfel*. apple.
 Apfelbaum, *m.* =*mes*, =*äume*. apple-tree.
 Aragonien, Aragon.
 arbeiten, *v.* *N.* work.
 arm, *adj.* poor.
 artig, *adj.* good, obedient.
 Asien, Asia.
 auch, *conj. or adv.* also, too.
 auf, *prep.* upon, on.
 auferstehen, *v.* *O.* f. rise up, rise from the dead.
 Aufgabe, *f.* =*ben*. task.
 aufgehen, *v.* *O.* f. go up, rise.
 aufgreifen, *v.* *O.* pick up, seize.

aufheben, *v.* *O.* lift up, put an end to.
 aufhören, *v.* *N.* stop.
 Auflage, *f.* =*gen*. edition.
 annehmen, *v.* *O.* take up.
 aufstehen, *v.* *O.* f. get up, rise.
 Auge, *n.* =*gs*, =*gen*. eye.
 Augenblick, *m.* =*ls*, =*fe*. instant.
 aus, *prep. or adv.* out of, from, away from.
 ausgehen, *v.* *O.* f. go out.
 ausschneiden, *v.* *O.* cut out.
 ausschēnen, *v.* *O.* look, appear.
 außerdem, *adv.* moreover.
 außerhalb, *prep.* outside of.
 äußerst, *adj.* uttermost, extreme.
 aussprechen, *v.* *O.* pronounce.
 aussuchen, *v.* *N.* pick out, choose.
 austragen, *v.* *O.* carry out.
 ausweichen, *v.* *O.* f. avoid.

Bahre, *f.* =*ren*. bier.
 bald, *adv.* soon.
 Band, 1. *n.* =*des*, =*de*. bond, tie; 2. *n.* =*des*, =*änder*. ribbon; 3. *m.* =*des*, =*ände*. volume.
 Bank, *f.* =*äne*. bench.
 Baum, *m.* =*mes*, =*äume*. tree.
 befehlen, *v.* *O.* command, order.
 begegnen, *v.* *N.* f. meet.
 begleiten, *v.* *N.* accompany.
 begrüßen, *v.* *N.* greet.
 behandeln, *v.* *N.* handle, treat.
 behend, *adj.* adroit, nimble.
 bei, *prep.* by, with.
 beide, *adj.* both.
 bestimmen, *v.* *N.* agree.
 bekennen, *v.* *N.* irreg. confess.
 bekommen, *v.* *O.* get, obtain.
 beleuchten, *v.* *N.* light.
 bemerken, *v.* *N.* remark, observe.
 Bemerkung, *f.* =*gen*. remark.
 Berg, *m.* =*gs*, =*ge*. mountain.
 beschäftigt, *adj.* busy.
 besser, *see* gut.
 bessern, *v.* *N.* to better, improve.
 best, *see* gut.
 bestehen, *v.* *O.* persist, consist.
 betrügen, *v.* *O.* deceive, betray.
 Bett, *n.* =*ties*, =*atten*. bed.
 betteln, *v.* *N.* beg.
 bewundern, *v.* *N.* admire.
 bezahlen, *v.* *N.* pay.

Bier, *n.* =res. beer.
 Bild, *n.* =bes, =ter. picture.
 bilden, *v.* *N.* form, make.
 bin, *from sein*, =am.
 binnen, *prep.* within.
 bis, *prep.* or *conj.* till, until.
 Bitte, *f.* =ten, request.
 bitten, *v.* *O.* beg, implore.
 Blatt, *n.* =tes, =ätter. leaf.
 blau, *adj.* blue.
 bleiben, *v.* *O.* s. remain.
 blind, *adj.* blind.
 blühen, *v.* *N.* bloom.
 Blume, *f.* =men. flower.
 Blümlein, *n.* =ns, =n. little flower.
 Blut, *n.* =tes. blood.
 Blüthe, *f.* =then. blossom.
 Boden, *m.* =ns. floor, ground.
 Böhmen, Bohemia.
 brennen, *v.* *N.* irreg. burn.
 Brief, *m.* =ses, =fe. letter, epistle.
 Briefträger, *m.* =rs, =r. letter-carrier.
 bringen, *v.* *N.* irreg. bring, carry.
 Brod, *n.* =bes, =öde. bread.
 Bruder, *m.* =rs, =über. brother.
 Buch, *n.* =ches, =üher. book.
 bunt, *adj.* gay, bright.
 Butter, *f.* butter.
 Cholera, *f.* cholera.
 da, *adv.* or *conj.* there, then; when, since.
 dadurch, *adv.* therethrough, by that means.
 Dame, *f.* =men, lady.
 damit, *adv.* or *conj.* therewith, with it or that, in order that.
 danken, *v.* *N.* thank.
 dann, *adv.* then, at that time.
 daran, *adv.* thereon, at or on it or them.
 darauf, *adv.* thereupon, upon or on it or them.
 darüber, *adv.* thereover, above or about it or them.
 darum, *adv.* thereabout, therefore.
 daß, *conj.* that, so that; daß . . . nicht, lest.
 dauern, *v.* *N.* last, endure.

davor, *adv.* before or in front of or because of it or them.
 dein, poss. *adj.* thy, thine.
 denken, *v.* *N.* irreg. think.
 denn, *conj.* or *adv.* then, for.
 der, die, das, 1. demonst. *pron.* and *adj.* this, this one, that, that one; as emphatic *pers.* *pron.* he, she, it; 2. def. *art.* the; 3. rel. *pron.* who, which, that.
 derjenige, *adj.* and *pron.* that or that one, those.
 derselbe, *adj.* and *pron.* the self-same or same, he, she, it.
 deshalb, *adv.* or *conj.* on that account, therefore.
 deutsch, *adj.* German; Deutsch, *n.* German language; Deutscher, *adj.* as noun, a German.
 Deutschland, *n.* =ds. Germany.
 Dichter, *m.* =rs, =r. poet.
 dienen, *v.* *N.* serve.
 Dienst, *m.* =tes, =te. service.
 dies (dieser, diese, dieses), *dem. adj.* or *pron.* this or that, this one or that one.
 Ding, *n.* =ges, =ge. thing.
 doch, *adv.* or *conj.* though, yet, nevertheless; surely.
 Dom, *m.* =mes, =me. cathedral.
 dort, *adv.* there, yonder.
 dramatisch, *adj.* dramatic.
 drei, *num.* three.
 dringen, *v.* *O.* s. or h. press, throng.
 du, *pers. pron.* thou.
 duftig, *adj.* fragrant.
 dulden, *v.* *N.* bear, endure.
 durch, *prep.* through.
 durchdringen, *v.* *O.* (sep.) press through, pierce, penetrate; (insep.) penetrate, permeate, pervade.
 dürfen, *v.* *N.* irreg. be allowed, feel authorized; sometimes rendered by may or might.
 Durst, *m.* =tes. thirst.
 eben, *adv.* even, just, exactly.
 ehren, *v.* *N.* honor.
 ein, *num.* one; *indef. art.* a, an.
 eingestehen, *v.* *O.* confess, own.
 einholen, *v.* *N.* overtake.

| | |
|--|---|
| einig, <i>adj.</i> one, united ; <i>pl.</i> einige, some, a few. | etwa, <i>adv.</i> about, nearly. |
| einkehren, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> f. turn in, enter. | etwas, <i>indef.</i> <i>pron.</i> something, somewhat. |
| einladen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> invite. | ewig, <i>adj.</i> eternal. |
| einmal, <i>adv.</i> once, one time. | Faden, <i>m.</i> =ns, =äben. thread. |
| einzig, <i>adj.</i> only. | fahren, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. or h. go, move, drive. |
| empfangen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> receive, take, accept. | Fahrt, <i>f.</i> =ten. passage, journey. |
| empfehlen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> recommend. | falsch, <i>adj.</i> false. |
| empor, <i>adv.</i> upward. | fallen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. fall. |
| Ende, <i>n.</i> =deß, =den. end. | farbig, <i>adj.</i> colored. |
| endlich, <i>adv.</i> at last. | Fass, <i>n.</i> =sses, =äßer. vat, barrel. |
| Engel, <i>m.</i> =ls, =l. angel. | faul, <i>adj.</i> lazy. |
| entblößen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> bare, lay bare. | Februar, <i>m.</i> =r8. February. |
| entdecken, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> discover, disclose. | fein, <i>adj.</i> fine, not coarse. |
| entfernen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> remove, put far off. | Fenster, <i>n.</i> =ts, =r. window. |
| entscheiden, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. fly, escape. | Fensterbrett, <i>n.</i> =tts, =tter. window-sill. |
| enthalten, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> contain. | fest, <i>adj.</i> firm. |
| entlocken, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> entice away, draw away. | Festtag, <i>m.</i> =ges, =ge. festival, feast day. |
| Entschluß, <i>m.</i> =sses, =üsse. resolution, determination. | finden, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> find. |
| entweder, <i>conj.</i> either. | Flasche, <i>f.</i> =schen. bottle. |
| entziehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> take away. | fleißig, <i>adj.</i> industrious. |
| er, <i>pers. pron.</i> he. | fliegen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. or h. fly. |
| erbarmen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> reflex. pity, have mercy on. | flüchten, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> fly, escape ; reflex. run away, take flight. |
| Erbe, <i>m.</i> =bes, =ben. heir. | Fluß, <i>m.</i> =sses, üsse. river. |
| erblicken, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> catch sight of, descry. | Fluth, <i>f.</i> =then. flood, water. |
| Erde, <i>f.</i> =den. earth, ground. | folgen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> f. follow. |
| erdenken, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> think out, invent. | fordern, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> demand. |
| ergehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. happen, go on, fare. | Form, <i>f.</i> =men. form. |
| - erinnern, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> reflex. remember. | fort, <i>adv.</i> forth, onward, away. |
| - erkennen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> irreg. perceive, recognize. | fortan, <i>adv.</i> henceforth. |
| erklären, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. sound forth. | fortsetzen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> continue. |
| erleben, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> live through, experience. | fragen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> ask. |
| ernennen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> irreg. appoint, name. | französisch, <i>adj.</i> French ; <i>französisch, n.</i> the French language. |
| erschallen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> f. resound. | Frau, <i>f.</i> =auen. woman, wife. |
| - erscheinen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. appear, seem. | freigebig, <i>adj.</i> liberal. |
| - erschrecklich, <i>adj.</i> frightful. | fremd, <i>adj.</i> strange. |
| erst, <i>adj.</i> and <i>adv.</i> first. | Freude, <i>f.</i> =den. joy. |
| - ertragen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> bear, endure. | Freudigkeit, <i>f.</i> joyousness. |
| erwarten, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> await. | freuen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> reflex. rejoice, be glad. |
| - Erwartung, <i>f.</i> =gen. expectation. | Freund, <i>m.</i> =deß, =de. friend. |
| - erzählen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> tell, recount. | freundlich, <i>adj.</i> friendly. |
| Erziehung, <i>f.</i> education. | Friede, <i>m.</i> =bens, =ben. peace. |
| es, <i>pron.</i> it. | Friedrich, Frederick. |
| Eselin, <i>f.</i> =innen. she-ass. | frisch, <i>adj.</i> fresh. |
| | froh, <i>adj.</i> happy, cheerful. |
| | frömm, <i>adj.</i> pious. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Frost, <i>m.</i> =tes, =te. frost. | gern, <i>adv.</i> with pleasure, gladly, willingly. |
| Frucht, <i>f.</i> =üchte. fruit. | Gesang, <i>m.</i> =gs, =änge. singing, song. |
| fruchtbar, <i>adj.</i> fruitful. | geschehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O. f.</i> happen, occur, take place. |
| früh, <i>adj.</i> early. | Geschenk, <i>n.</i> =fes, =te. gift. |
| Frühjahr, <i>n.</i> =rs, =re. spring. | Geschöpf, <i>n.</i> =pfes, =pfe. creature. |
| führen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> carry, conduct, guide. | Gesellschaft, <i>f.</i> =ien. company, society. |
| Führer, <i>m.</i> =rs, =r. guide. | Gesichtchen, <i>n.</i> =ns, =n. little face. |
| fünf, <i>num.</i> five. | gestern, <i>adv.</i> yesterday. |
| für, <i>prep.</i> for. | Getränk, <i>n.</i> =fes, =te. drink, beverage. |
| Furcht, <i>f.</i> fear, terror. | gewiss, <i>adj.</i> sure, certain. |
| fürchten, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> fear; <i>reflex.</i> be afraid of. | gibt, <i>from</i> geben, givest. |
| Fußboden, <i>m.</i> =ns. floor. | gibt, <i>from</i> geben, gives. |
| ganß, <i>adj.</i> whole, entire. | Glanz, <i>m.</i> =zes. radiance, brightness. |
| gänzlich, <i>adj.</i> total, complete. | Glas, <i>n.</i> =ses, =äser. glass. |
| gar, <i>adv.</i> quite, entirely. | glauben, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> believe. |
| Garten, <i>m.</i> =ns, =ärten. garden. | gleich, <i>adj.</i> like, similar. |
| Gasse, <i>f.</i> =sen. lane, street. | Glück, <i>n.</i> =tes. happiness, good fortune, luck. |
| gebären, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> bear, bring forth. | glücklich, <i>adj.</i> fortunate, happy. |
| geben, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> give. | Gnade, <i>f.</i> =en. grace, favor. |
| gebe, <i>from</i> geben, give. | Gold, <i>n.</i> =des. gold. |
| Gebild, <i>n.</i> =des, =de. thing built, image. | golden, <i>adj.</i> golden. |
| Gebirg, <i>n.</i> =ges, =ge. mountain range or mass. | Gott, <i>m.</i> =tes, =üter. God. |
| geboren, <i>from</i> gebären. | Göttin, <i>f.</i> =innen. goddess. |
| Gedanke, <i>m.</i> =ns, =en. thought. | Graf, <i>m.</i> =en, =en. count, earl. |
| gedeihen, <i>v.</i> <i>O. f.</i> thrive, prosper. | Gräfin, <i>f.</i> =innen. countess. |
| Gedicht, <i>n.</i> =tes, =te. poem. | Gras, <i>n.</i> =ses, =äser. grass. |
| gesessen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> please, suit. | groß, <i>adj.</i> great, large, big. |
| Gefälligkeit, <i>f.</i> =ten. courtesy. | Großmutter, <i>f.</i> =üter. grandmother. |
| gegen, <i>prep.</i> against, opposed to, toward. | grün, <i>adj.</i> green. |
| gegenüber, <i>adv.</i> opposite. | grünen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> grow green, be green. |
| gegenwärtig, <i>adj.</i> present. | grüßen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> greet, salute. |
| Gegner, <i>m.</i> =rs, =r. opponent. | gut, <i>adj.</i> good; <i>comp.</i> besser, <i>sup.</i> best. |
| gehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O. f.</i> go, walk. | Gut, <i>n.</i> =tes, =üter. property, possession. |
| Geist, <i>m.</i> =tes, =ter. spirit, mind. | habe, <i>from</i> haben, have. |
| geistig, <i>adj.</i> spiritual, mental. | haben, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> irreg. have, possess. |
| geizig, <i>adj.</i> avaricious, greedy. | hageln, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> impers. hail. |
| geläufig, <i>adj.</i> ready, flowing, easy. | halb, <i>adj.</i> half. |
| Geld, <i>n.</i> =des, =ber. money. | Hand, <i>f.</i> =änbe. hand. |
| gelingen, <i>v.</i> <i>O. impers. f.</i> prove successful, turn out well. | hängen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> suspend, attach. |
| gelten, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> have value, be recognized as worth. | hartherzig, <i>adj.</i> hardhearted. |
| gemäß, <i>prep.</i> conformably to, according to. | häflich, <i>adj.</i> ugly. |
| genießen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> enjoy. | hat, <i>from</i> haben, has. |
| genug, <i>adv.</i> enough, sufficient. | |
| gerecht, <i>adj.</i> righteous. | |

| | |
|---|--|
| Haupt, <i>n.</i> -tes, -äupter. head, chief. | immer, <i>adv.</i> always. |
| Haus, <i>n.</i> -ses, -äuser. house; <i>zu</i> Hause, at home. | in, <i>prep.</i> in, into, at (175). ins = in das. |
| Heer, <i>n.</i> -res, -re. army. | irdisch, <i>adj.</i> earthly. |
| heilig, <i>adj.</i> holy. | irgend, <i>adv.</i> ever, soever, whatever; irgend etwas, anything whatever. |
| Heinrich, Henry. | ist, <i>from</i> sein, is. |
| heiter, <i>adj.</i> cheerful, gay, lively. | ja, yes. |
| heiß, <i>adj.</i> hot. | Jahr, <i>n.</i> -res, -re. year. |
| Held, <i>m.</i> -den, -den. hero. | Januar, <i>m.</i> -rs. January. |
| helfen, <i>v.</i> O. help. | jed (jeder, jede, jedes), <i>pron.</i> each, every. |
| hell, <i>adj.</i> bright, clear. | jedermann, <i>m.</i> -ns. every man, every one. |
| herannahen, <i>v.</i> N. §. draw near, approach. | Jemand, <i>pron.</i> some or any one, anybody. |
| Herr, <i>m.</i> -rrn, -ren. master, lord, gentleman; in address, Sir; before proper name, Mr. | jen (jener, jene, jenes), <i>pron.</i> yon, yonder, that. |
| hervortreten, <i>v.</i> O. §. step forth, come out, appear. | jetzt, <i>adv.</i> now. |
| Herz, <i>n.</i> -zens, -zen. heart. | Jugend, <i>f.</i> youth. |
| herzlich, <i>adj.</i> hearty, cordial. | Juli, <i>m.</i> -i§. July. |
| heute, <i>adv.</i> to-day. | jung, <i>adj.</i> young. |
| heutig, <i>adj.</i> to-day's, belonging to to-day. | Jüngling, <i>m.</i> -gs, -ge. young man, youth. |
| hier, <i>adv.</i> here. | Kaiser, <i>m.</i> -rs, -r. emperor. |
| Himmel, <i>m.</i> -ls. heaven. | kalt, <i>adj.</i> cold. |
| hin, <i>adv.</i> hence, that way, away from the speaker. | Karl, Charles. |
| hinausgehen, <i>v.</i> O. §. go out. | Käse, <i>m.</i> -ses, -se. cheese. |
| hinaussehen, <i>v.</i> O. look out, look forth. | katholisch, <i>adj.</i> catholic. |
| hinfahren, <i>v.</i> O. §. go hence, go away. | kaufen, <i>v.</i> N. buy. |
| hingehen, <i>v.</i> O. §. go forth. | Kaufleute, <i>pl.</i> merchants, tradesmen. |
| hinten, <i>adv.</i> behind. | Kaufmann, <i>m.</i> -nn§, -ännar. merchant. |
| hinter, <i>prep.</i> behind. | kaum, <i>adv.</i> hardly, scarcely. |
| hoch, <i>adj.</i> high. | kein, <i>pron.</i> no, none, not one. |
| hoffen, <i>v.</i> N. hope. | kommen, <i>v.</i> N. irreg. know, be acquainted with. |
| Hoffnung, <i>f.</i> -gen. hope. | Kind, <i>n.</i> -des, -der. child. |
| Höhe, <i>f.</i> -en. height. | klagen, <i>v.</i> N. mourn, bewail. |
| hohl, <i>adj.</i> hollow, empty. | Kleid, <i>n.</i> -des, -der. dress, garment. |
| holen, <i>v.</i> N. bring, fetch. | klein, <i>adj.</i> little. |
| hören, <i>v.</i> N. hear. | Knabe, <i>m.</i> -ben, -ben. boy. |
| hübsch, <i>adj.</i> pretty. | Knochen, <i>m.</i> -ns, -n. bone. |
| Hund, <i>m.</i> -des, -de. dog. | Koffer, <i>m.</i> -rs, -r. coffer, trunk. |
| hungern, <i>v.</i> N. impers. hunger, be hungry. | Köln, Cologne (city). |
| Hut, <i>m.</i> -tes, -üte. hat. | kommen, <i>v.</i> O. §. come. |
| ich, <i>pers. pron.</i> I. | König, <i>m.</i> -gs, -ge. king. |
| ihr, <i>poss. adj.</i> her, its, their; Ihr, your. | Königin, <i>f.</i> -innen. queen. |
| ihrig, <i>poss. adj.</i> her, its, their. | königlich, <i>adj.</i> kingly, royal. |
| im = in dem. | |

Königreich, *n.* -ches, -che. kingdom, realm.
können, *v.* *N.* irreg. be able, can.
Kopf, *m.* -pfes, -öpfe. head.
Kopfschütteln, *adj.* shaking the head.
Kosten, *v.* *N.* cost; es kostet, it costs.
Kraft, *f.* -ten. power, strength.
kräftig, *adj.* strong, powerful.
Krämer, *m.* -rös, -r. shopkeeper.
Krank, *adj.* sick, ill.
Krieg, *m.* -gës, -ge. war.
kümmерlich, *adj.* miserable, pitiful, wretched.
künftig, *adj.* to come, future.
Kunst, *f.* -ünste. art.
Kurz, *adj.* short.
Kutscher, *m.* -rös, -r. coachman.
lächeln, *v.* *N.* smile.
Land, *n.* -des, -änder. land, country.
Landreise, *f.* -sen. journey in the country.
landen, *v.* *N.* f. land.
lang, *adj.* long.
lange, *adv.* for a long time.
lassen, *v.* *O.* leave, let, allow; with another infinitive, cause, make, occasion.
Laster, *n.* -rös, -r. crime.
laufen, *v.* *O.* f. run.
lauschen, *v.* *N.* lie in wait to hear or see, listen.
lauter, *adj.* clear, pure, mere; *adv.* mere, downright, nothing but.
leben, *v.* *N.* live.
Leben, *n.* -ns, -n. life.
Lebensquell, *m.* -lles, -le. spring or fountain of life.
leer, *adj.* empty.
lehren, *v.* *N.* teach.
Lehrer, *m.* -rös, -r. teacher.
Leib, *m.* -bes, -ber. body.
leicht, *adj.* light, easy.
Leid, *n.* -des. harm, pain, sorrow.
Leidenschaft, *f.* -ten. passion.
Leidenszeit, *f.* -ten. time of sorrow.
Lenz, *m.* -zes, -ze. spring.
Leiche, *f.* -chen. lark.
lernen, *v.* *N.* learn.
lesen, *v.* *O.* read.

lest, *adj.* last, latest.
Leute, *pl.* people, men.
Licht, *n.* -tes, -ter. light, candle.
lieb, *adj.* dear, beloved.
Liebe, *f.* love.
lieben, *v.* *N.* love.
Lied, *n.* -des, -ber. song.
Liedchen, *n.* -ns, -n. little song.
Lilie, *f.* -en. lily.
loben, *v.* *N.* praise.
lohnend, *v.* *N.* reward.
los, *adj.* loose, rid of, free.
Löwe, *m.* -en, -en. lion.
Lust, *f.* -üste. air, breeze.
Lust, *f.* -üste. pleasure, delight, longing.
machen, *v.* *N.* make.
Mädchen, *n.* -ns, -n. girl.
Mai, *m.* -ties. May.
Major, *m.* -rös. Major.
malen, *v.* *N.* paint.
man, *indef. pron.* one, people, they.
manch, *indef. pron. sing.* many a, many a one; *pl.* many.
Mann, *m.* -nnes, -änn. man.
Mark, *f.* -sen. mark (a weight or a coin).
Markt, *m.* -tes, -ärkte. market, market-place.
matt, *adj.* faint, dull.
Meer, *n.* -res, -re. sea, ocean.
mehr, *adv.* more.
mein, *poss. adj.* my, mine.
meinig, *poss. adj.* my, mine.
meist, *adj.* most; *adv.* mostly.
Meister, *m.* -rös, -r. master, teacher.
Meisterstück, *n.* -tes. masterpiece.
Menge, *f.* -gen. mass, multitude.
Mensch, *m.* -schen, -schen. man, person, human being.
merken, *v.* *N.* notice.
mishandeln, *v.* *N.* maltreat.
mit, *prep.* with.
mitnehmen, *v.* *O.* take along.
mitten, *adv.* midway, in the midst.
Mitternacht, *f.* -ächte. midnight.
mögen, *v.* *N.* irreg. may, might, like, choose.
möglich, *adj.* possible.
Möhr, *m.* -res, -ren. Moor.

| | |
|---|---|
| Monat, <i>m.</i> =t8, =te. month. | öffnen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> open. |
| Mond, <i>m.</i> =des, =de. moon. | oft, <i>adv.</i> often. |
| Morgen, <i>m.</i> =n8, =n. morn, morning, morrow. | ohne, <i>prep.</i> without, but for. |
| morgen, <i>adv.</i> to-morrow. | Öhring, <i>m.</i> =g8, =ge. earring. |
| Morgenbote, <i>m.</i> =ten, =ten. herald of morning. | Onkel, <i>m.</i> =l8, =l. uncle. |
| Morgenrot, <i>n.</i> =t8. red of morning, aurora. | Palme, <i>f.</i> =men. palm. |
| müde, <i>adj.</i> weary, tired. | Papier, <i>n.</i> =r8, =re. paper. |
| müssen, <i>v. N.</i> <i>irreg.</i> must, be under necessity of, be forced to. | Person, <i>f.</i> =nen. person, personage. |
| Muth, <i>m.</i> =thes. courage. | Posaune, <i>f.</i> =en. trumpet. |
| Mutter, <i>f.</i> =ütter. mother. | Post, <i>f.</i> =ten. post, mail. |
| nach, <i>prep.</i> after, to. | preisen, <i>v. O.</i> praise, value. |
| nacheilen, <i>v. N.</i> f. hurry after. | Preuse, <i>m.</i> =ßen, =ßen. Prussian. |
| nachfolgen, <i>v. N.</i> f. follow after. | Prinz, <i>m.</i> =zen, =zen. prince. |
| nachlaufen, <i>v. O.</i> f. run after. | |
| Nachricht, <i>f.</i> =ten. news. | Rath, <i>m.</i> =t8, =äthe. counsel, advice. |
| nächst, <i>adj.</i> (superlative of nah) next, nearest; as noun, neighbor. | rauchen, <i>v. N.</i> smoke. |
| Nacht, <i>f.</i> =ten. night. | recht, <i>adj.</i> right, just; <i>adv.</i> really, actually; very. |
| Nachtigall, <i>f.</i> =llen. nightingale. | Recht, <i>n.</i> =te8, =te. right, privilege. |
| Name, <i>m.</i> =ens8, =en. name. | reden, <i>v. N.</i> talk. |
| Marr, <i>m.</i> =ren, =ren. fool. | redlich, <i>adj.</i> honest. |
| Natur, <i>f.</i> =ren. nature. | Regenbogen, <i>m.</i> =en8, =en. rainbow. |
| nehmen, <i>v. O.</i> take. | regnen, <i>v. N.</i> <i>impers.</i> rain. |
| neigen, <i>v. N.</i> bend, incline. | Roh, <i>m.</i> =hes, =he. roe, deer. |
| Nest, <i>n.</i> =tes, =ter. nest. | reich, <i>adj.</i> rich. |
| Netz, <i>n.</i> =hes, =he. net. | reisen, <i>v. N.</i> f. travel, journey. |
| neu, <i>adj.</i> new. | reiten, <i>v. O.</i> h. or s. ride. |
| neulich, <i>adv.</i> newly, lately. | reizend, <i>adj.</i> charming. |
| neun, <i>num.</i> nine. | retten, <i>v. N.</i> save. |
| nicht, <i>adv.</i> not. | Richterstuhl, <i>m.</i> =les. judgment-seat. |
| nichts, <i>indef. pron.</i> indecl. nothing. | ritterlich, <i>adj.</i> knightly. |
| nie, <i>adv.</i> never. | Rose, <i>f.</i> =sen. rose. |
| nieder, <i>adv.</i> down, downward. | rosig, <i>adj.</i> rosy. |
| niederknieen, <i>v. N.</i> kneel down. | roth, <i>adj.</i> red. |
| Niemand, <i>indef. pron.</i> no one, not any one. | Rücken, <i>m.</i> =ens8, =en. back. |
| nirgends, <i>adv.</i> nowhere, in no place. | rufen, <i>v. O.</i> call. |
| noch, <i>adv.</i> still, yet. | Ruhe, <i>f.</i> rest, repose, quiet. |
| Noth, <i>f.</i> need, want. | Ruhestätte, <i>f.</i> =en. resting-place. |
| Nothwendigkeit, <i>f.</i> =ten. necessity. | ruhig, <i>adj.</i> quiet, restful. |
| nun, <i>adv.</i> now, at present. | Ruhm, <i>m.</i> =mes. fame, renown. |
| nur, <i>adv.</i> only, solely, merely. | |
| ob, <i>conj.</i> whether. | sagen, <i>v. N.</i> say. |
| oder, <i>conj.</i> or. | Sand, <i>m.</i> =des. sand. |
| | Sarg, <i>m.</i> =ges, =ärge. coffin. |
| | schämen, <i>v. N.</i> reflex. be ashamed. |
| | schändlich, <i>adj.</i> shameful. |
| | Schaß, <i>n.</i> =ges, =äße. treasure. |
| | schäzen, <i>v. N.</i> treasure, esteem. |
| | schäumen, <i>v. N.</i> foam. |

| | |
|---|--|
| Scheitel, <i>f.</i> =In. crown of the head. | singen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> sing. |
| schicken, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> send. | Sinn, <i>m.</i> =nes, =ne or =nen. sense, |
| Schicksal, <i>n.</i> =Is, =le. fate, destiny. | mind, intention, disposition. |
| schlagen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> strike. | sitzen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> sit. |
| schlecht, <i>adj.</i> bad. | Sitzung, <i>f.</i> =gen. session. |
| schmeicheln, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> flatter. | so, <i>adv.</i> so, thus. |
| Schmerz, <i>m.</i> =jens or =jes, =jen. pain, sorrow. | sogar, <i>adv.</i> even. |
| schnell, <i>adj.</i> quick, rapid. | sogleich, <i>adv.</i> immediately, directly. |
| schön, <i>adv.</i> already. | Sohn, <i>m.</i> =nes, =öhne. son. |
| schön, <i>adj.</i> beautiful, handsome. | Soldat, <i>m.</i> =ten, =ten. soldier. |
| Schöpfung, <i>f.</i> =gen. creation, created thing. | sollen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> irreg. shall, should, owe, ought to; be to; be said to. |
| schrecklich, <i>adj.</i> terrible, frightful. | Sommer, <i>m.</i> =rs, =r. summer. |
| schreiben, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> write. | sondern, <i>conj.</i> after negative, but. |
| Schritt, <i>m.</i> =tes, =te. step. | Sonne, <i>f.</i> =nen. sun. |
| Schuh, <i>m.</i> =hes, =he. shoe. | Sophie, Sophia. |
| Schuld, <i>f.</i> =ben. debt. | sorgen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> care, take care. |
| Schule, <i>f.</i> =len. school. | spät, <i>adj.</i> late. |
| Schüler, <i>m.</i> =rs, =r. scholar. | spazieren, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> walk, go abroad, take a turn; sp. gehen, take a walk; sp. fahren, take a drive. |
| schwach, <i>adj.</i> weak, feeble. | Sprache, <i>f.</i> =chen. speech, language. |
| Schwalbe, <i>f.</i> =ben. swallow (bird). | sprechen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> speak. |
| schwarz, <i>adj.</i> black. | springen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. or h. spring. |
| schweigen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> be silent. | Staat, <i>m.</i> =tes, =ten. state, country. |
| schwer, <i>adj.</i> heavy, difficult. | Stadt, <i>f.</i> =äfte. city. |
| Schwester, <i>f.</i> =rn. sister. | Standpunkt, <i>m.</i> =fts, =fte. stand-point, point of view. |
| Schwiegersonn, <i>m.</i> =nes, =öhne. son-in-law. | stark, <i>adj.</i> strong. |
| schwingen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> swing; reflex. swing one's self, leap. | stehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> stand. |
| sechs, <i>num.</i> six. | Stein, <i>m.</i> =nes, =ne. stone. |
| Seele, <i>f.</i> =len. soul, spirit. | Stelle, <i>f.</i> =len. place, spot. |
| segnen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> bless. | sterben, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. die. |
| sehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> see, look. | sterblich, <i>adj.</i> mortal. |
| sehnen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> reflex. long for. | Stern, <i>m.</i> =nes, =ne. star. |
| sehr, <i>adv.</i> very. | stillen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> still, quiet, assuage. |
| sein, poss. <i>adj.</i> his, its. | Stock, <i>m.</i> =des, =öfe. stick, staff. |
| sein, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> f. be, exist. | Stoff, <i>m.</i> =fes, =fe. stuff, material. |
| seit, <i>prep.</i> since. | Strahl, <i>m.</i> =les, =len. beam, ray. |
| Seite, <i>f.</i> =ten. side, page. | Strand, <i>m.</i> =des. strand, shore. |
| selber, <i>adj.</i> indecl. self. | Strafe, <i>f.</i> =sen. street. |
| selbst, <i>adj.</i> indecl. self. | streng, <i>adj.</i> strict, severe. |
| selten, <i>adj.</i> rare, unusual, seldom. | streuen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> strew, scatter. |
| sehen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> set, cause to sit, place. | Strom, <i>m.</i> =mes, =öme. stream, river. |
| seufzen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> sigh. | Stückchen, <i>n.</i> =ns, =n. little piece. |
| sich, <i>reflex. pron.</i> himself, herself, itself, themselves. | Student, <i>m.</i> =ten, =ten. student. |
| sie, <i>pers. pron.</i> she, her, it; they, them; Sie, you. | studiren, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> study. |
| siegen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> gain the victory, triumph. | Stuhl, <i>m.</i> =les, =ühle. chair. |
| Silber, <i>n.</i> =rs. silver. | Stunde, <i>f.</i> =den. hour. |
| find, <i>from sein, are.</i> | stützen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> prop up, support; reflex. lean. |

| | |
|---|---|
| suchen, <i>v. N.</i> seek. | um, <i>prep.</i> around, about, respecting, concerning; <i>before infinitive with zu</i> , in order, so as. |
| Sünder, <i>m.</i> =r̄s, =r̄. sinner. | um . . . willen, <i>prep.</i> on account of. |
| süß, <i>adj.</i> sweet. | unartig, <i>adj.</i> naughty. |
| | und, <i>conj.</i> and. |
| tadeln, <i>v. N.</i> blame. | Unerfahrenheit, <i>f.</i> inexperience. |
| Tag, <i>m.</i> =ges, =ge. day. | Ungarn, Hungary. |
| tagen, <i>v. N.</i> dawn, become day. | ungefähr, <i>adv.</i> about, nearly, not far from. |
| Talent, <i>n.</i> =t̄s, =te. talent. | ungeheuer, <i>adj.</i> uncanny, monstrous, huge. |
| Tasche, <i>f.</i> =s̄chen. pocket. | ungeschehen, <i>adj.</i> unhappened, undone. |
| täuschen, <i>v. N.</i> deceive, delude, cheat. | Unglück, <i>n.</i> =d̄s, =de. ill-luck, misfortune. |
| Teufel, <i>m.</i> =l̄s, =l̄. devil. | unglücklich, <i>adj.</i> unhappy, unfortunate. |
| Thaler, <i>m.</i> =r̄s, =r̄. dollar. | unmöglich, <i>adj.</i> impossible. |
| Theater, <i>n.</i> =r̄s, =r̄. theatre. | Unrecht, <i>n.</i> =t̄s. wrong, error. |
| theilen, <i>v. N.</i> divide, separate, share. | unser, <i>poss. adj.</i> our. |
| Thier, <i>n.</i> =res, =re. animal. | unter, <i>prep.</i> under, beneath, among. |
| Thor, <i>m.</i> =res, =re. door, gate, portal. | unweit, <i>prep.</i> not far from. |
| Thräne, <i>f.</i> =nen. tear. | |
| thun, <i>v. O.</i> do, perform. | Bater, <i>m.</i> =r̄s, =äter. father. |
| Thür, <i>f.</i> =ren. door. | Verachtung, <i>f.</i> contempt, scorn. |
| tiep, <i>adj.</i> deep. | verbinden, <i>v.</i> O. bind up, bind together, join. |
| Tisch, <i>m.</i> =s̄ch̄s, =s̄che. table. | Verbrecher, <i>m.</i> =r̄s, =r̄. transgressor, criminal. |
| Tochter, <i>f.</i> =öchter. daughter. | verbreiten, <i>v.</i> N. spread abroad, diffuse, circulate. |
| Töchterchen, <i>n.</i> =n̄s, =n̄. little daughter. | vergeben, <i>v. O.</i> forgive. |
| Tod, <i>m.</i> =des, =de. death. | vergebens, <i>adv.</i> in vain. |
| tödten, <i>v. N.</i> kill. | vergessen, <i>v. O.</i> forget. |
| tragen, <i>v. O.</i> carry. | verlangen, <i>v. N.</i> desire, demand. |
| traurig, <i>adj.</i> sad. | verlassen, <i>v. O.</i> leave, desert, forsake. |
| trennen, <i>v. N.</i> separate, part. | verleihen, <i>v. O.</i> lend, confer, bestow. |
| treten, <i>v. O. f.</i> tread, proceed, come, enter. | verlieren, <i>v. O.</i> lose. |
| treu, <i>adj.</i> true, faithful. | vermählen, <i>v. N.</i> give in marriage; reflex. marry, espouse. |
| Treue, <i>f.</i> truth, fidelity. | vermögen, <i>v. N.</i> irreg. have power, be able to, can. |
| trösten, <i>v. N.</i> console, comfort. | Bernunft, <i>f.</i> reason. |
| Tugend, <i>f.</i> =den. virtue. | verreisen, <i>v. N. f.</i> go on a journey, travel away. |
| | verschwinden, <i>v. O. f.</i> disappear. |
| über, <i>prep.</i> over, above, higher than. | verschenen, <i>v. O.</i> provide, furnish. |
| überall, <i>adv.</i> everywhere. | versprechen, <i>v. O.</i> promise. |
| übernachten, <i>v. N.</i> spend the night. | |
| übersehen, <i>v. N.</i> set over or across; translate. | |
| Überschuh, <i>m.</i> =hes, =he. overshoe. | |
| übertragen, <i>v. O.</i> carry over, transport. | |
| Übung, <i>f.</i> =gen. practice. | |
| Uhr, <i>f.</i> =ren. hour, clock; <i>invariable after numerals</i> , o'clock. | |

| | |
|--|--|
| verstehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> understand. | weh, <i>adj.</i> sad, painful. |
| versterben, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> die, expire; verstorben, deceased. | Weh, <i>n.</i> -hes, -he or -hen. woe, pain, distress. |
| Versuch, <i>m.</i> -ches, -che. attempt, trial. | Weib, <i>n.</i> -bes, -ber. woman, wife. |
| verwandeln, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> change, transform. | weichen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> give way, retire, yield. |
| verwundern, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> strike with wonder, astonish, amaze. | weil, <i>conj.</i> because, since. |
| viel, <i>adj.</i> much, many. | Wein, <i>m.</i> -nes, -ne. wine. |
| vielleicht, <i>adv.</i> perhaps. | weise, <i>adj.</i> wise. |
| Viertel, <i>m.</i> -ls, -l. quarter. | Weisheit, <i>f.</i> wisdom. |
| Vogel, <i>m.</i> -ls, -ögel. bird. | weiß, <i>adj.</i> white. |
| Volk, <i>n.</i> -les, -ölker. people, nation. | welt, <i>adj.</i> wide, broad, far off. |
| voll, <i>adj.</i> full. | welch, <i>interrog. or rel. adj. or pron.</i> which, what, that; <i>in-def. pron.</i> some, any. |
| vollenden, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> complete, accomplish. | Welt, <i>f.</i> -ten. world. |
| von, <i>prep.</i> of, from, by. | wenden, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> turn, direct, apply. |
| vor, <i>prep.</i> before, for, on account of, because of. | wenig, <i>adj.</i> little, not much; few, not many. |
| vorauß, <i>adv.</i> in advance. | wenn, <i>conj.</i> when, if. |
| vorbeigehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> go by, pass by. | wer, <i>pron. interrog. or rel.</i> who, he who, whoever. |
| vorfahren, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> go or drive before, drive up. | werden, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> become. |
| vornehm, <i>adj.</i> of superior rank, distinguished, aristocratic. | Werf, <i>n.</i> -les, -le. work. |
| vor singen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> sing before or for, sing for others to hear. | werken, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> work, be busy. |
| vortrefflich, <i>adj.</i> admirable, excellent. | werth, <i>adj.</i> worth, worthy, deserving. |
| vorübergehen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> go past, pass by. | Werth, <i>m.</i> -thes, -the. worth, value. |
| Wagen, <i>m.</i> -ns, -n. wagon, coach, carriage. | wichtig, <i>adj.</i> weighty. |
| wahr, <i>adj.</i> true. | wie, <i>adv.</i> how? in what way? <i>conj.</i> how, as, like as. |
| während, <i>prep.</i> during; <i>conj.</i> while. | wieder, <i>adv.</i> again. |
| Wahrhaftigkeit, <i>f.</i> truthfulness. | wiederholen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> repeat. |
| Wald, <i>m.</i> -des, -älter. wood, forest. | wiederkehren, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> <i>f.</i> come back, return. |
| Wand, <i>f.</i> -ände. wall. | Wiege, <i>f.</i> -en. cradle. |
| warm, <i>adj.</i> warm. | Wille, <i>m.</i> -ns, -n. will, intent, purpose. |
| warten, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> wait, await. | Wilhelm, William. |
| warum, <i>adv.</i> or <i>conj.</i> why, wherefore. | Winter, <i>m.</i> -rs, -r. winter. |
| was, <i>pron. interrog. or rel.</i> what, that which, whatever; was für, what kind of. | wir, <i>pers. pron.</i> we. |
| waschen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> wash. | wirklich, <i>adj.</i> actual, real, genuine. |
| Wasser, <i>n.</i> -rs. water. | Wirthshaus, <i>n.</i> -ses, -äuser. public house, inn. |
| Weg, <i>m.</i> -ges, -ge. way, road. | wissen, <i>v.</i> <i>N. irreg.</i> know. |
| | wo, <i>adv.</i> or <i>conj.</i> where. |
| | Woche, <i>f.</i> -hen. week. |
| | woher, <i>adv.</i> or <i>conj.</i> whence. |
| | wohin, <i>adv.</i> or <i>conj.</i> whither. |
| | wohl, <i>adv.</i> well. |
| | wohnen, <i>v.</i> <i>N.</i> dwell. |
| | wollen, <i>v.</i> <i>N. irreg.</i> will, be willing, intend, desire, wish. |

| | |
|---|--|
| worauf, <i>adv.</i> whereupon, upon which. | ziehen, <i>v. O.</i> draw, pull, bring; proceed, go, march. |
| Wort, <i>n.</i> -tes, -te or -örter, word. | Zierde, <i>f.</i> -den. ornament. |
| Wunde, <i>f.</i> -den. wound. | Zimmer, <i>n.</i> -rs, -r. room. |
| wunderlich, <i>adj.</i> strange, odd, peculiar. | Born, <i>m.</i> -nes. anger, wrath. |
| wundern, <i>v.</i> <i>N. reflex.</i> wonder, be astonished. | zu, <i>prep.</i> to, at, for, in; <i>adv.</i> before adj. too. |
| Wunsch, <i>m.</i> -sches, -ünsche. wish, desire. | zufrieden, <i>adj.</i> contented. |
| Wüste, <i>f.</i> -ten. desert. | zugethan, <i>ppl.</i> devoted, attached. |
| Wuth, <i>f.</i> fury, rage. | zum = zu dem. |
| zärtlich, <i>adj.</i> tender, soft. | zurück, <i>adv.</i> back. |
| Zeit, <i>f.</i> -ten. time. | zurückkommen, <i>v. O.</i> <i>f.</i> come back. |
| zeitlebens, <i>adv.</i> all one's lifetime, for life. | zurückziehen, <i>v. O.</i> draw back. |
| Zeitung, <i>f.</i> -gen. newspaper. | Zwang, <i>m.</i> -ges, -änge. compulsion, constraint, force. |
| zerreißen, <i>v.</i> <i>O.</i> tear in pieces. | zwei, <i>num.</i> two. |
| Zettel, <i>m.</i> -ls, -l. bit of paper, note, card. | Zweig, <i>m.</i> -ges, -ge. twig, branch. |
| | zweit, <i>num. adj.</i> second. |
| | Zwicke, <i>f.</i> -ln. onion. |

ENGLISH-GERMAN.

a or **an**, *indef. art.* *ein, eine.*
able, be able, *v.* können, *N.* *irreg.*
absent, *adj.* abwesend.
admire, *v.* bewundern, *N.*
afraid, be afraid, *v.* sich fürchten, *N.*
after, *conj.* nachdem.
all, *adj.* all.
allow, be allowed, *v.* dürfen, *N.* *irreg.*
along, *prep.* entlang.
already, *adv.* schon.
also, *adv.* auch.
although, *conj.* obgleich.
always, *adv.* immer.
am, I am, ich bin (*from* sein).
America, Amerika.
American, Amerikaner, *m.* =r8, =r.
and, *conj.* und.
another, *adj.* ein ander.
answer, *v.* antworten, *N.*
anything, *pron.* etwas, irgend etwas.
apple, Apfel, *m.* =ls, Apfel.
approach, *v.* herannahen, *N.* *f.*
are, we or they are, sind (*from* sein).
as, *conj. or adv.* als.
ashamed, be ashamed, *v.* sich schämen, *N.*
ask, *v.* fragen, *N.*
at, *prep.* (at such o'clock) um.
Augusta, Auguste, *f.*
autumn, Herbst, *m.* =tes, =te.
avoid, *v.* ausweichen, *O.* *f.*
away, *adv.* fort.
bad, *adj.* schlecht.
ball, Ball, *m.* =lles, =älle.
be, *v.* sein, *O.*
beautiful, *adj.* schön.
because, *conj.* weil.
become, *v.* werden, *O.* *f.*
before, *prep.* vor; *conj.* ehe.
begin, *v.* anfangen, *O.*

behead, *v.* enthaupten, *N.*
behind, *prep.* hinter.
believe, *v.* glauben, *N.*
beloved, geliebt, *ppl. of* lieben.
beside, *prep.* neben.
better, *adj. or adv.* besser, artiger.
between, *prep.* zwischen.
bite, *v.* beißen, *O.*
black, *adj.* schwarz.
blame, *v.* tadeln, *N.*
blue, *adj.* blau.
bond, Band, *n.* =bes, =de.
book, Buch, *n.* =ches, =ücher.
born, *ppl.* geboren (*from* gebären).
bottle, Flasche, *f.* =schen.
boy, Knabe, *m.* =ben, =ben.
box, Kasten, *m.* =ns, =n.
bread, Brod, *n.* =bes, =de.
break, *v.* brechen, *O.*; break in pieces, zerbrechen.
broad, *adj.* breit.
brother, Bruder, *m.* =rs, =über.
but, *conj.* aber; after negative, sondern.
butter, Butter, *f.*
buy, *v.* kaufen, *N.*
by, *prep.* von.
bystanders, die Umstehenden.
can, *v.* können, *N.* *irreg.*
cause, *v.* lassen, with an infinitive, *O.*
chair, Stuhl, *m.* =les, =ühle.
charming, *adj.* reizend.
child, Kind, *n.* =bes, =der.
cholera, Cholera, *f.*
church, Kirche, *f.* =en.
city, Stadt, *f.* =äfte.
close, *v.* zumachen, *N.*
cloth, Tuch, *n.* =ches, =ücher.
clothes, Kleider (*pl. of* Kleid, dress).
coachman, Kutscher, *m.* =rs, =r.
cold, *adj.* kalt.
come, *v.* kommen, *O.* *f.*; come back, zurückkommen.

| | |
|---|---|
| comrade , Kamerad, <i>m.</i> =b8, =ben. | garden , Garten, <i>m.</i> =ns, =ärten. |
| cool , <i>adj.</i> kühl. | German , <i>adj.</i> deutsch. |
| copy , <i>v.</i> abschreiben, <i>O.</i> | German , <i>der Deutsche</i> , <i>adj.</i> as <i>n.</i> |
| count , Graf, <i>m.</i> =sen, =sen. | Germany , Deutschland, <i>n.</i> |
| country , Land, <i>n.</i> =des, =änder; | give , <i>v.</i> geben, <i>O.</i> : I give, ich ge- be; thou <i>g.</i> , du gibst; he <i>g.</i> , er gibt; they <i>g.</i> , sie geben; give back, zurückgeben. |
| native <i>c.</i> , Vaterland, <i>n.</i> | go , <i>v.</i> gehen, <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> ; go along, mit- gehen; go away, fortgehen; go out, ausgehen. |
| cousin , Betscher, <i>m.</i> =rs, =r; Cousine, <i>f.</i> =nen. | gone , be gone, fort sein. |
| dance , <i>v.</i> tanzen, <i>N.</i> | good , <i>adj.</i> gut, artig. |
| daughter , Tochter, <i>f.</i> =d8ter. | grandehild , Enkel, <i>m.</i> =l8, =l. |
| day , Tag, <i>m.</i> =ges, =ge. | grieve , I am grieved, es thut mir leid. |
| departed , dead, verstorben, <i>ppl.</i> of versterben, <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> | grow , become, <i>v.</i> werden, <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> |
| desire , <i>v.</i> mögen, <i>N.</i> <i>irreg.</i> | gun , Flint, <i>f.</i> =en. |
| dethrone , <i>v.</i> entthronen, <i>N.</i> | |
| die , <i>v.</i> sterben, <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> | half , <i>adj.</i> halb. |
| discover , <i>v.</i> entdecken, <i>N.</i> | hand , Hand, <i>f.</i> =ände. |
| distant , entfernt, <i>ppl.</i> of entfer- nen, <i>N.</i> | handsome , <i>adj.</i> schön. |
| do , <i>v.</i> thun, <i>O.</i> | happy , <i>adj.</i> glücklich. |
| dog , Hund, <i>m.</i> =des, =de. | hardly , <i>adv.</i> kaum. |
| door , Thür, <i>f.</i> =re. | hasten after , <i>v.</i> nacheilen, <i>N.</i> <i>f.</i> |
| dress , Kleid, <i>n.</i> =b8, =der. | hate , <i>v.</i> hassen, <i>N.</i> |
| drive , <i>v.</i> fahren, <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> | hateful , gehaßt, <i>ppl.</i> of hassen. |
| during , <i>prep.</i> während. | have , <i>v.</i> haben, <i>N.</i> <i>irreg.</i> : I have, ich habe; he has, er hat; we have, wir haben; they have, sie ha- ben. |
| earth , Erde, <i>f.</i> =ben. | have to , be obliged to, <i>v.</i> müssen, <i>N.</i> <i>irreg.</i> |
| eat , <i>v.</i> essen, <i>O.</i> | he , <i>pron.</i> er. |
| either . . . or , entweder . . . oder. | headache , Kopfweh, <i>n.</i> =b8. |
| Emperor , Kaiser, <i>m.</i> =rs, =r. | hear , <i>v.</i> hören, <i>N.</i> |
| Empress , Kaiserin, <i>f.</i> =rinnen. | help , <i>v.</i> helfen, <i>O.</i> |
| end , at an end, zu Ende. | henceforth , <i>adv.</i> künftig. |
| Englishman , Engländer, <i>m.</i> =rs, =r. | here , <i>adv.</i> hier. |
| enough , <i>adv.</i> genug. | high , <i>adj.</i> hoch (73 d). |
| evade , <i>v.</i> ausweichen, <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> | his , <i>poss.</i> sein, seinig. |
| evening , Abend, <i>m.</i> =b8, =de. | home , at home, zu Hause. |
| exile , der Verbannte, <i>adj.</i> as <i>n.</i> | how , <i>adv.</i> wie. |
| fall , <i>v.</i> fallen, <i>O.</i> <i>f.</i> | hungry , <i>adj.</i> hungrig. |
| father , Vater, <i>m.</i> =rs, =äter. | |
| fetch back , <i>v.</i> wiederholen, <i>N.</i> <i>sep.</i> | I , <i>pron.</i> ich. |
| field , Feld, <i>n.</i> =des, =der. | if , <i>conj.</i> wenn. |
| find , <i>v.</i> finden, <i>O.</i> | in , <i>prep.</i> in with <i>dat.</i> or <i>accus.</i> (175). Ex. 36. 13, Zu Frankfurt. |
| fire , Feuer, <i>n.</i> =rs, =r. | industrious , <i>adj.</i> fleißig. |
| floor , Boden, <i>m.</i> =ns, =öden. | instead of , <i>prep.</i> anstatt. |
| flower , Blume, <i>f.</i> =men. | into , <i>prep.</i> in with <i>accus.</i> (175). |
| follow , <i>v.</i> folgen, <i>N.</i> <i>f.</i> | invite , <i>v.</i> einladen, <i>O.</i> |
| foot , Fuß, <i>m.</i> =f8, =üße. | |
| for , <i>prep.</i> für; <i>conj.</i> denn. | |
| forest , Wald, <i>m.</i> =des, =älber. | |
| forget , <i>v.</i> vergessen, <i>O.</i> | |
| friend , Freund, <i>m.</i> =des, =de. | |

is, ist (*from sein*).
it, *pron.* es.

journey, *v.* reisen, *N.* f. ; journey off or away, abreisen, *N.* f.

king, König, *m.* =g $\ddot{\text{s}}$, =ge.

knife, Messer, *n.* =r $\ddot{\text{s}}$, =r.

know, *v.* wissen, *N.* *irreg.*

language, Sprache, *f.* =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$ n.

large, *adj.* groß.

lay, *v.* legen, *N.*

learn, *v.* lernen, *N.*

learned, *adj.* gelehrt.

leave, *v.* verlassen, *O.*

lesson, Aufgabe, *f.* =ben.

letter, Brief, *m.* =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$ s, =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$.

life, Leben, *n.* =n $\ddot{\text{s}}$, =n.

like, like to, *v.* mögen, *N.* *irreg.*

little, *adj.* klein ; *adv.* wenig.

live, *v.* leben, *N.* or wohnen, *N.*

long, *adj.* lang ; for a long time, *adv.* lange ; no longer, nicht mehr.

long for, *v.* sich sehnen, *N.*

look upon, *v.* betrachten, *N.*

lose, *v.* verlieren, *O.*

louder, *adj.* or *adv.* höher.

love, *v.* lieben, *N.*

madman, Wahnsinniger, *adj.* as *n.*

maintain, *v.* behaupten, *N.*

make, *v.* machen, *N.*

man, Mann, *m.* =nnes, =ännner.

man (a human being, mankind), Mensch, *m.* =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$ n, =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$ n.

many, *adj.* viel.

may (22. 4), dürfen, *N.* *irreg.* ; *adv.* sehr.

meet, *v.* begegnen, *N.* f. ; go to meet, entgegen gehen.

merchant, Kaufmann, *m.* =nnes, =ännner, Kaufleute.

moment, Minute, *f.* =ten.

monarch, Monarch, *m.* =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$ n, =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$ n.

money, Geld, *n.* =des, =der.

month, Monat, *m.* =ts, =te.

morning, Morgen, *m.* =n $\ddot{\text{s}}$, =n ; this morning, heute morgen.

mother, Mutter, *f.* =ütter.

mountain, Berg, *m.* =ges, =ge.

mountain-range, Gebirg, *n.* =ges, =ge.

much, *adj.* and *adv.* viel.
must, *v.* müssen, *N.* *irreg.*
my, *poss.* mein.

naughty, *adj.* unartig.

never, *adv.* nie, niemals.

new, *adj.* neu.

news, Nachricht, *f.* =ten.

next, *adj.* nächst.

no, *adv.* nein ; *adj.* kein ; no one, Niemand.

noble, *adj.* edel.

not, *adv.* nicht.

nothing, indecl. *pron.* nichts.

now, *adv.* jetzt.

o'clock, Uhr, *f.* (115 d).

of, *prep.* von.

often, *adv.* oft.

old, *adj.* alt.

on, *prep.* auf.

only, *adv.* nur.

open, *v.* aufmachen, *N.*

order, in order to, *conj.* um . . . zu.

ought, *v.* sollen, *N.* *irreg.*

outside, *prep.* außerhalb.

over, *prep.* über.

overshoe, Überstulph, *m.* =hes, =he.

part, Theil, *m.* =ls, =le.

people, Leute, *pl.*

picture, Bild, *n.* =bes, =ber.

piece, Stück, *n.* =les, =le.

pity, take pity, *v.* sich erbarmen, *N.* (182 b).

plainly, *adv.* deutlich.

plate, Teller, *m.* =r $\ddot{\text{s}}$, =r.

play together, *v.* zusammenspiel-en, *N.*

poor, *adj.* arm.

pound, Pfund, *n.* =des, =de.

praise, *v.* loben, *N.*

present, Geschenk, *n.* =f $\ddot{\text{e}}$ s, =fe.

present, *adj.* anwesend, *adj.* as *n.*

pretty, *adj.* hübsch.

promise, *v.* versprechen, *O.*

pronounce, *v.* aussprechen, *O.*

put on, *v.* anzlehen, *O.*

raise, *v.* aufheben, *O.*

read, *v.* lesen, *O.*

receive, *v.* empfangen, *O.*

recognize, *v.* anerkennen, *N.* *irreg.*

red, *adj.* roth.
rejoice, *v.* sich freuen, *N.*
remain, *v.* bleiben, *O. f.*
repeat, *v.* wiederholen, *N. insep.*
rest, *v.* sich ausruhen, *N.*
return, *v.* zurückkommen, *O. f.*
ribbon, Band, *n.* =des, =änder.
rich, *adj.* reich.
rid, be rid of, los werden (186).
ring, Ring, *m.* =gs, =ge.
river, Fluss, *m.* =fes, =üsse.
room, Zimmer, *n.* =r, =r.
row, Reihe, *f.* =hen.

save, *v.* retten, *N.*
say, *v.* sagen, *N.*
school, Schule, *f.* =len.
seat one's self, *v.* sich setzen, *N.*
see, *v.* sehen, *O.*
sell, *v.* verkaufen, *N.*
set (the sun), *v.* untergehen, *O. f.*
she, *pron.* sie.
short, *adj.* kurz.
sick, *adj.* krank.
sing, *v.* singen, *O.*
sink, *v.* hinuntergehen, *O. f.*
sister, Schwester, *f.* =rn.
sit, *v.* sitzen, *O.*
slowly, *adv.* langsam.
small, *adj.* klein.
snow, *v.* schneien, *N. impers.*
so, *adv.* or *conj.* so.
society, Gesellschaft, *f.* =ten.
some, *indef. pron.* etwas.
some, *adj.* einige, *pl.*
son, Sohn, *m.* =nes, =öhne.
song, Lied, *n.* =des, =der; little song, Liedchen, *n.* =ns, =n.
soon, *adv.* bald.
sorry, I am sorry, es thut mir leid.
speak, *v.* sprechen, *O.*
spend (time), *v.* zubringen, *N.* irreg.
spite, in spite of, *prep.* trotz.
spring along, *v.* heranspringen, *O. f.*
stand, *v.* stehen, *O.*
stay, *v.* bleiben, *O. f.*
story, Märchen, *n.* =ns, =n.
strike, *v.* schlagen, *O.*
student, Student, *m.* =ten, =ten.
study, *v.* studieren, *N.*
successor, Nachfolger, *m.* =r, =r.

sugar, Zucker, *m.* =r.
sun, Sonne, *f.* =nen.
sweet, *adj.* süß.
swim, *v.* schwimmen, *O.*

table, Tisch, *m.* =sches, =sche.
take, *v.* nehmen, *O.*; take along, mitnehmen; take a walk, spazieren gehen.
talk, *v.* sprechen, *O.*
tall, *adj.* groß, hoch.
teacher, Lehrer, *m.* =r, =r.
tell, *v.* sagen, *N.*
than, *conj.* als.
that, *dem. pron.* jener; *rel. pron.* welcher, der; *conj.* daß.
the, *art.* der, die, das.
their, *poss. pron.* ihr.
then, *adv.* dann.
there, *adv.* da, dort; there is or are, es gibt, es sind.
thine, *poss. pron.* dein deinig, (89 b).
this, *dem. pron.* dieser.
threaten, *v.* drohen, *N.*
three, *num.* drei.
through, *prep.* durch.
throw down, *v.* umwerfen, *O.*
till, *conj.* bis.
to, *prep.* zu, nach.
to-day, *adv.* heute.
to-morrow, *adv.* morgen.
to-night, *adv.* heute Abend.
too, *adv.* auch.
translate, *v.* übersetzen, *N. insep.*
travel, *v.* reisen, *N. f.*
tree, Baum, *m.* =mes, =äume.
true, *adj.* wahr.
truth, Wahrheit, *f.* =ten.
Tuesday, Dienstag, *m.* =gs, =ge.

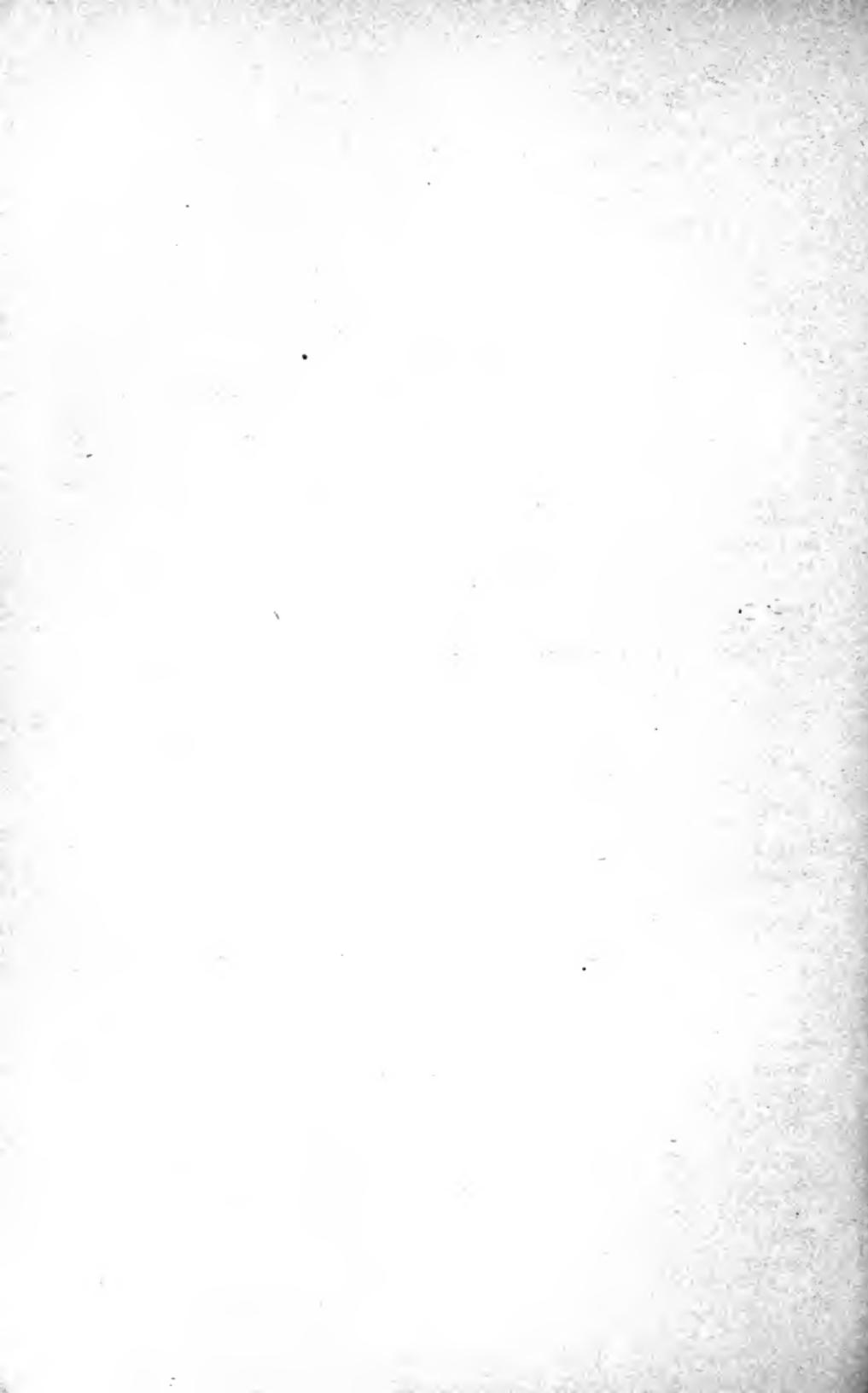
ugly, *adj.* häßlich.
uncle, Onkel, *m.* =ls, =l.
under, *prep.* unter.
understand, *v.* verstehen, *O.*
until, *conj.* bis.
up and down, auf und ab.

very, *adv.* sehr.
virtue, Tugend, *f.* =den.
visit, *v.* besuchen, *N.*

wait, *v.* warten, *N.* (182).
wander, *v.* wandern, *N. f.*

want, *v.* wollen, *N.* *irreg.*, wünschen, *N.*
war, Krieg, *m.* =gs, =ge.
warm, *adj.* warm.
we, *pron.* wir.
weak, *adj.* schwach.
weather, Wetter, *n.* =rs.
week, Woche, *f.* =hen.
well, *adv.* wohl, gut.
what, *pron. interrog. or rel.* was, welcher (97, 98, 101-3); what kind of, was für (99).
when, *adv.* als, wann.
whether, *conj.* ob.
which, *pron. rel. or interrog.* welcher (98-103).
while, *conj.* während, indem.
white, *adj.* weiß.
whither, *adv.* wohin.
who, *pron. interrog.* wer? *rel.* or interrog. der.
whole, *adv.* ganz.
why, *adv.* warum.
William, Wilhelm, *m.* =ms.

window, Fenster, *n.* =rs, =r.
wine, Wein, *m.* =ns, =ne.
winter, Winter, *m.* =rs, =r.
wise, *adj.* weise.
wish, *v.* wünschen, *N.*
with, *prep.* mit.
within, *prep.* innerhalb.
without, *prep. and conj.* ohne.
woman, Weib, *n.* =bes, =ber; Frau, *f.* =en.
wood, Wald, *m.* =des, =älder.
word, Wort, *n.* =tes, =te or =örter.
work, *v.* arbeiten, *N.*
write, *v.* schreiben, *O.*
yard, Elle, *f.* =len.
year, Jahr, *m.* =res, =re.
yes, ja.
yesterday, *adv.* gestern.
yet, *adv.* noch; not yet, noch nicht.
you, *pron.* ihr, Sie (85).
young, *adj.* jung.
your, *poss.* euer, Ihr (88).



LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Explanations.—In the following table are given the principal parts of all the verbs of the Old conjugation, together with the preterit subjunctive; also the second and third singular indicative present and the second singular imperative, whenever these are otherwise formed than they would be in the New conjugation. Forms given in full-faced type (thus, *gebadden*) are those which are alone in use; for those in ordinary type (thus, *bäfft, bäft*) the more regular forms, or those made after the manner of the New conjugation, are also allowed; forms enclosed in parenthesis are especially unusual, poetical or dialectic: a subjoined remark gives additional explanation, if any is needed.

For convenience, the forms of the modal auxiliaries and other irregular verbs of the New conjugation are included in the List. They are distinguished by being put in ordinary type throughout.

No verb is given in the List as a compound. If found only in composition, hyphens are prefixed to all its forms, and an added note gives its compounds.

| Infinitive. | pres't | indic. sing. | pret. indic. | pret. subj. | imper. | past part. |
|--|-------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| Bäcken , 'bake' | bäckst, bäft | bük | büke | — | gebadden | |
| often of New conj., especially when transitive; except the participle. | | | | | | |
| -bären , | =bierst, =biert | =bar | =bäre | =bier | =boren | |
| only in <i>gebären</i> , 'bear, bring forth' (formerly <i>geberen</i>). | | | | | | |
| Weissen , 'bite' | — | biß | bisse | — | gebissen | |
| Bergen , 'hide' | birgst, birgt | barg | bärge | birg | geborgen | |
| | | | bürge | | | |
| Bersten , 'burst' | birfstest, birfst | barst | bärste | birst | gebosten | |
| | | borst | börste | | | |
| biegen , 'bend' | — | bog | böge | — | gebogen | |
| Bieten , 'offer' | (beutst, bent) | bot | böte | (beut) | geboten | |
| Binden , 'bind' | — | band | bände | — | gebunden | |
| Bitten , 'beg' | — | bat | bäte | — | gebeten | |
| blasen , 'blow' | bläfest, bläft | bliess | bliese | — | geblasen | |
| Bleiben , 'remain' | — | blieb | bliebe | — | geblieben | |
| Bleichen , 'bleach' | — | blich | bliche | — | geblieben | |
| as intransitive, of either conj.; as transitive, of New only. | | | | | | |
| Braten , 'roast' | bräist, brät | briet | briete | — | gebraten | |
| Brechen , 'break' | brichst, bricht | brach | bräche | brich | gebrochen | |
| Brennen , 'burn' | — | brannte | brennte | — | gebrannt | |
| Bringen , 'bring' | — | brachte | brächte | — | gebracht | |
| -delhen | — | =dich | =diche | — | =dichen | |
| obsolete except in <i>gedeihen</i> , 'thrive.' | | | | | | |

| Infinitive. | pres't indic. sing. | pret. ind. | pret. subj. | imper. | past part. |
|---|------------------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------|------------|
| Denken, 'think' | — — | dachte | dachte | — | gedacht |
| -derben | =dirbst, =dirbt | =darb | =darbe =dürbe | =dirb | =dorben |
| only in verberben, 'perish;' which, as transitive, 'destroy,' is of New conj. | | | | | |
| Dingen, 'engage' | — — | dung (dang) | bünge | — | gedungen |
| Dreschen, 'thresh' | brishest, brischt | brash | bräshe | brisch | gedroschen |
| -driessen | — (=dreuſt) | =droſſ | =droſſe | (=dreuſh) | =droſſen |
| only in verbriesen, 'vex.' | | | | | |
| Dringen, 'press' | — — | drang | dränge | — | gedrungen |
| Dürfen, 'be permitted' | darf, darfſt, darf | durfte | dürfte | wanting | gedurft |
| Essen, 'eat' | ißest, ißt | ah | ähe | iß | gegessen |
| Fahren, 'go' | fährſt, fährt | fuhr | führe | — | gefahren |
| Fallen, 'fall' | fällſt, fällt | fiel | fielle | — | gefallen |
| Fangen, 'catch' | fängſt, fängt | sing | singe | — | gefangen |
| Fechten, 'fight' | fichtest, ficht | ſocht | ſöchte | ficht | geföchten |
| -ſehlen | =ſiehſt, ſiehlt, -ſahl | =ſähle =ſöhle | =ſiehl | =ſohlen | |
| only in beſehlen, 'command,' empfehlen, 'commend.' | | | | | |
| Finden, 'find' | — — | ſand | ſände | — | gefunden |
| Flechten, 'twine' | ſicht, ſicht | ſlocht | ſlöchte | ſicht | geſlochten |
| Fleihen, 'apply' | ſiſh | ſiſſe | ſiſſe | — | geſliſſen |
| antiquated except in ſich beſleihen, 'exert one's self.' | | | | | |
| Fliegen, 'fly' | (ſleugt, ſleugt) | ſlog | ſlöge | (ſleug) | geſlogen |
| Fliehen, 'flee' | (ſleucht, ſleucht) | ſloh | ſlöhe | (ſleuch) | geſlohen |
| Fließen, 'flow' | (ſleuſt, ſleuſt) | ſloß | ſlöſſe | (ſleuſh) | geſloſſen |
| Fragen, 'ask' | frägſt, frägt | ſrug | ſrüge | — | gefragt |
| properly a verb of the New conjugation only. | | | | | |
| Fressen, 'devour' | frifſest, frift | ſraß | ſräße | friß | geſreſſen |
| Frieren, 'freeze' | — — | ſror | ſröre | — | geſroren |
| Gären, 'ferment' | — — | gohr | göhre | — | gegohren |
| also spelt gären etc., without h. | | | | | |
| Geben, 'give' | glebſt, giebt gibſt, gibt | gab | gäbe | gleb gib | gegeben |
| Gehen, 'go' | — — | ging | ginge | — | gegangen |
| Gelten, 'be worth' | giltſt, gilt | galt | gälte | gilt | gegolten |
| -geſſen | =giſſest, giſt | =gah | =gähe | =giß | =geſſen |
| only in vergeſſen, 'forget.' | | | | | |
| Giehen 'pour' | (geuſt, geuſt) | goß | göſſe | (geuſh) | gegoſſen |
| -giinnen | — — | =gann | =gänne =gönne | — | =gonnen |
| only in beginnen, 'begin.' | | | | | |
| Gleichen, 'resemble' | — — | glich | gliche | — | gegliſchen |
| usually of New conj. when transitive, 'make similar.' | | | | | |
| Gleiten, 'glide' | — — | glitt | glitte | — | geglitten |
| Glimmen, 'gleam' | — — | glomm | glömme | — | geglommen |

| Infinitive. | pres't | indic. sing. | pret. ind. | pret. subj. | imper. | past part. |
|--|------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| Grab'en , 'dig' | gräbst | gräbt | grub | grübe | — | gegraben |
| Greif'en , 'gripe' | — | — | griff | grisse | — | gegriffen |
| Haben , 'have' | hast , hat | | hatte | hatte | — | gehabt |
| Hälten , 'hold' | hältest , hält | | hielt | hielte | — | gehalten |
| Hangen , 'hang' | hängst , hängt | hing (hangit, hangt) | hinge | hinge | — | gehängen |
| sometimes confounded in its forms with hängen , 'hang' (trans.), New conj. | | | | | | |
| Hauen , 'hew' | — | — | hieb | hiebe | — | gehauen |
| Heben , 'raise' | — | — | hob | höbe | — | gehoben |
| Heißen , 'call' | — | — | hieß | hieße | — | geheißen |
| Helfen , 'help' | hilfst , hilft | | half | hälfe | hilf | geholfen |
| Kießen , 'chide' | — | — | liss | lisſe | — | gefisſen |
| Kennen , 'know' | — | — | kannte | kannte | — | gekannt |
| Kieſen , 'choose' | — | — | kos | löſe | — | gekōſen |
| antiquated, and most often met in erſieſen : küren is the same word. | | | | | | |
| Klemmen , 'press' | — | — | klomm | klomme | — | geklommen |
| forms of Old conj. very rare except from belemmen . | | | | | | |
| Klieben , 'cleave' | — | — | kllob | klöbe | — | geklöben |
| Klimmen , 'climb' | — | — | klomm | klomme | — | geklommen |
| Klingen , 'sound' | — | — | klang | klänge | — | geklungen |
| rarely of New conj., especially when transitive. | | | | | | |
| Kneiſen , 'pinch' | — | — | kniff | kniffe | — | gekniffen |
| Kneipen , 'pinch' | — | — | knipp | knippe | — | geknippen |
| Kommen , 'come' | (kōmmst, kōmmt) | lam | kāme | — | gekommen | |
| Können , 'can' | kānn, kānnst, kānn | kānnte | kānnte | wanting | gekōnnnt | |
| Kriechen , 'creep' | (kreuchst, kreucht) | krōch | krōche | (kreuch) | gekrōchen | |
| Küren , 'choose' | — | — | lor | löre | — | gekōren |
| Laden , 'load' | lädt , lädt | lub | lübe | — | geladen | |
| Lassen , 'let' | läſſest , läſt | ließ | ließe | — | gelassen | |
| Laufen , 'run' | läufſt , läufſt | ließ | ließe | — | gelaufen | |
| Leiden , 'suffer' | — | — | litt | litte | — | geleidet |
| Leihen , 'lend' | — | — | lieh | liche | — | geleihet |
| Lesen , 'read' | liest , liest | las | läſe | lies | gelesen | |
| Liegen , 'lie' | — | — | lag | läge | — | gelegen |
| Liſſen , only in verliſſen , 'lose.' | — | — | ſlor | ſlöre | — | ſloren |
| ſlingen | — | — | ſlang | ſlänge | — | ſlungen |
| only in gelingen , 'succeed,' mißlingen , 'fail,' used in third person only. | | | | | | |
| Löschen , 'extinguish' | liſtēſt, liſtēt | loſch | lösche | liſch | gelöschen | |
| the forms of New conj. preferably limited to transitive meaning | | | | | | |
| Lügen , 'lie' | (leugſt, leugt) | log | läge | (leug) | gelogen | |
| Mahlen , 'grind' | mähſt, mählt | mühl | mühle | — | gemahlen | |
| the forms of Old conj. now in use only in the participle. | | | | | | |
| Meiden , 'shun' | — | — | mied | miede | — | gemieden |
| Melken , 'milk' | (miltſt, miltt) | molk | mölke | (milk) | gemolßen | |

| Infinitive. | pres't indic. sing. | pret. ind. | pret. subj. | imper. | past part. |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------------|
| Messen , 'measure' | misst | mißt | maß | miß | gemeß |
| Mögen, 'may' | mag, magst, mag | mochte | möchte | wanting | gemocht |
| Müssen, 'must' | muß, mußt, muß | mußte | mußte | wanting | gemußt |
| Nehmen , 'take' | nimmst , nimmt | nahm | nähme | nimm | genommen |
| Nennen, 'name' | — | nannte | nennte | — | genannt |
| neßen only in <i>genesen</i> , 'recover, get well.' | — | nes | neße | — | neßen |
| neichen obsolete, except in <i>genießen</i> , 'enjoy.' | (=nehest, =neust) | neich | neisse | (=neuß) | neissen |
| Pfeifen , 'whistle' | — | pfeif | pfeife | — | gepfeif |
| Pslegen , 'cherish' | — | pflög | pflöge | — | gepflogen |
| pflag | | | | | |
| Preisen , 'praise' | — | pries | priese | — | gepriesen |
| forms of the New conj. are occasionally met with. | | | | | |
| Quellen , 'gush' | quillst, quillt | quoll | quölle | quill | gequollen |
| of New conj. when transitive, 'swell, soak.' | | | | | |
| Rächen , 'avenge' | — | (roch) | (röche) | — | gerochen |
| forms of Old conj. very rare, except the participle. | | | | | |
| Rathen , 'advise' | räthst, räth | rieth | riethe | — | gerathen |
| Reiben , 'rub' | — | rieb | riebe | — | gerieben |
| Reißen , 'tear' | — | riß | riss | — | gerissen |
| Reiten , 'ride' | — | ritt | ritte | — | geritten |
| Nennen, 'run' | — | rannte (rannte) | rennte | — | gerannt (gerennt) |
| Riechen , 'smell' | (reuchst, reucht) | roch | röche | (reuch) | gerochen |
| Ringen , 'wring' | — | rang | ränge | — | gerungen |
| Rinnen , 'run' | — | rann | ränne | — | geronnen |
| Rufen , 'call' | — | rief | riese | — | gerufen |
| rarely of New conj. in preterit. | | | | | |
| Saufen , 'drink' | säufst, säuft | soff | sölle | — | gesoffen |
| Saugen , 'suck' | — | sog | söge | — | gesogen |
| forms of New conj. occasionally met; sometimes confounded with <i>säugen</i> , 'suckle.' | | | | | |
| Schaffen , 'create' | — | schuf | schüfe | — | geschaffen |
| generally of New conj. when meaning 'be busy,' or 'procure.' | | | | | |
| Schallen , 'sound' | — | scholl | schölle | — | geschollen |
| schehen , only in <i>geschehen</i> , 'happen,' used in third person alone. | schicht | schah | schähe | — | geschehen |
| Scheiden , 'part' | — | schied | schiede | — | geschieden |
| Scheinen , 'appear' | — | schien | schiene | — | geschienen |
| Schelten , 'scold' | schiltst, schilt | schalt | schälte | schilt | gescholten |
| Scheren , 'shear' | schierst, schiert | schor | schöre | schier | geschoren |
| Schieben , 'shove' | — | schob | schöbe | — | geschoben |
| Schießen , 'shoot' | (scheust, scheust) | schoss | schösse | (scheuß) | geschossen |
| Schinden , 'flay' | — | schund | schünd | — | geschünden |

| Infinitive. | pres't indic. sing. | pret. ind. | pret. subj. | imper. | past part. |
|---|---|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Schlafen , 'sleep' | schläft , schläft | schließt | schließe | — | geschlaßen |
| Schlagen , 'strike' | schlägt , schlägt | schlug | schläge | — | geschlagen |
| Schleichen , 'sneak' | — | — | schlich | schliche | — |
| Schleifen , 'whet' | — | — | schliff | schliffe | — |
| | in other senses than 'whet, sharpen,' properly of New conj. | | | | |
| Schleissen , 'slit' | — | — | schliss | schlisse | — |
| Schließen , 'slip' | — | — | schloß | schlösse | — |
| Schließen , 'shut' | (schleuhest , schleuht) | schloß | schlösse | (schleuß) | geschlossen |
| Schlingen , 'sling' | — | — | schlang | schlänge | — |
| Schmeißen , 'smite' | — | — | schmizt | schmisse | — |
| Schmelzen , 'melt' | schmilzt , schmilzt | schmolz | schmolze | schmilz | geschmolzen |
| | usually and properly of the New conj. when transitive. | | | | |
| Schnauben , 'snort' | — | — | schnob | schnöbe | — |
| Schneiden , 'cut' | — | — | schnitt | schnitte | — |
| Schrauben , 'screw' | — | — | schrob | schröbe | — |
| Schreden , 'be afraid' | schrist , schricht | schraf | schrale | schrik | geschroden |
| of New conj. as transitive, 'frighten.' | | | | | |
| Schreiben , 'write' | — | — | schrieb | schriebe | — |
| Schreien , 'cry' | — | — | schrie | schree | — |
| Schreiten , 'stride' | — | — | schritt | schritte | — |
| Schwärzen , 'suppurate' | (schwierst , schwier) | schwör | schwöre | — | geschworen |
| Schweigen , 'be silent' | — | — | schwieg | schwiege | — |
| | sometimes of New conj. as transitive, 'silence.' | | | | |
| Schwellen , 'swell' | schwillt , schwillt | schwoll | schwölle | schwill | geschwollen |
| of New conj. as transitive. | | | | | |
| Schwimmen , 'swim' | — | — | schwamm | schwämme | — |
| | schwomm schwömme | | | | |
| Schwinden , 'vanish' | — | — | schwand | schwände | — |
| | schwund schwünde | | | | |
| Schwingen , 'swing' | — | — | schwang | schwänge | — |
| | schwung schwünge | | | | |
| Schwören , 'swear' | — | — | schwör | schwöre | — |
| | schwur schwüre | | | | |
| Sehen , 'see' | siehst , sieht , | sah | sähe | sieh | gesehen |
| Sein , 'be' | bin , bist , ist <i>u.</i> | war | wäre | sei | gewesen |
| Senden , 'send' | — | — | sandte | sendete | — |
| | | | sendete | — | gesandt |
| Sieden , 'boil' | — | — | sott | siedete | — |
| | | | | | gesiedt |
| Singen , 'sing' | — | — | sang | sänge | — |
| | | | | | gesungen |
| Sinken , 'sink' | — | — | sank | sänke | — |
| | | | | | gesunken |
| Sinnen , 'think' | — | — | sann | sänne | — |
| | | | | | gesonnen |
| Sitzen , 'sit' | — | — | sah | sähe | — |
| | | | | | gesessen |
| Sollen , 'shall' | soll , sollst , soll | sollte | sollte | — | wanting |
| | | | | | gesollt |
| Speien , 'spit' | — | — | spie | spiee | — |
| rarely, of the New conj. | | | | | gespieen |
| Spinnen , 'spin' | — | — | spann | spänne | — |
| | | | | | gesponnen |

| Infinitive. | pres't | indic. sing. | pret. indic. | pret. subj. | imper. | past part. |
|--|----------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| Spleißen, 'split' | — | — | spliß | splißte | — | gesplißen |
| Sprechen, 'speak' | sprichst | spricht | sprach | spräche | sprich | gesprochen |
| Sprößen, 'sprout' | (spreuhest, spreuhi) | sproß | — | sprösse | (spreu) | gesprossen |
| Springen, 'spring' | — | — | sprang | spränge | — | gesprungen |
| Stechen, 'prick' | stichst, sticht | stach | stach | stäche | stich | gestochen |
| Stecken, 'stick' | stiebst, stieft | stak | stak | stäkte | stic | gestochen |
| usually of New conj., especially when transitive. | | | | | | |
| Stehen, 'stand' | — | — | stand | stände | — | gestanden |
| Stehlen, 'steal' | stiehlest, stiehlt | stahl | stahl | stähle | stiehl | gestohlen |
| Steigen, 'ascend' | — | — | stieg | stiege | — | gestiegen |
| Sterben, 'die' | stirbst, stirbt | starb | starb | stirbte | stirb | gestorben |
| Stieben, 'disperse' | — | — | stob | stöbe | — | gestoben |
| Stinken, 'stink' | — | — | stank | stänke | — | gestunken |
| Stoßen, 'push' | stöhest, stöht | stieß | stieß | stieße | — | gestoßen |
| Streichen, 'stroke' | — | — | strich | striche | — | gestrichen |
| Streiten, 'strive' | — | — | stritt | stritte | — | gestritten |
| Thun, 'do' | — | — | that | thäte | — | gethan |
| the pret. indic. thät is common in dialectic German, esp'y as auxiliary. | | | | | | |
| Tragen, 'carry' | trägst, trägt | trug | trüge | — | getragen | |
| Treffen, 'hit' | triffst, trifft | traf | träfe | triff | getroffen | |
| Treiben, 'drive' | — | — | trieb | triebe | — | getrieben |
| Treten, 'tread' | trittst, tritt | trat | trate | tritt | getreten | |
| Triesen, 'drip' | (treufst, treuft) | troff | tröffe | (treuf) | getroffen | |
| Trinken, 'drink' | — | — | trank | tränke | — | getrunken |
| Trügen, 'deceive' | — | — | trug | tröge | — | getrogen |
| Wachsen, 'grow' | wächtest, wächst | wuchs | wüchse | — | gewachsen | |
| Wägen, 'weigh' | — | — | wog | wöge | — | gewogen |
| compare wegen and wiegen, which are the same word. | | | | | | |
| Waschen, 'wash' | wäschest, wäscht | wusch | wüsche | — | gewaschen | |
| Weben, 'weave' | — | — | wob | wöbe | — | gewoben |
| wegen, | — | — | =wog | =wöge | — | wegen |
| only in bewegen, 'induce;' bewegen in other senses is of New conj. | | | | | | |
| Weichen, 'yield' | — | — | wich | wiche | — | gewichen |
| of New conj. when meaning 'soften' (as trans. or intrans.) | | | | | | |
| Weisen, 'show' | — | — | wies | wiese | — | gewiesen |
| Wenden, 'turn' | — | — | wandte | wendete | — | gewandt |
| gewendet | | | | | | |
| Werben, 'sue' | wirbst, wirbt | warb | wärbe | wirb | geworben | |
| Werden, 'become' | wirfst, wird | ward | würde | — | geworden | |
| Werfen, 'throw' | wirfst, wirft | warf | wärfe | wirf | geworfen | |
| | | | würfe | | | |

| Infinitive. | pres't | indic. sing. | pret. indic. | pret. subj. | imper. | past part. |
|--|--------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|---------|-----------------|
| Wiegen , 'weigh' | — | — | wog | wöge | — | gewogen |
| the same word with <i>wägen</i> and <i>wegen</i> : <i>wiegen</i> , 'rock,' is of New conj. | | | | | | |
| Winden , 'wind' | — | — | wand | wände | — | gewunden |
| gewinnen | — | — | <i>gewann</i> | <i>gewanne</i> | — | <i>gewonnen</i> |
| only used in <i>gewinnen</i> , 'win.' | | | | | | |
| Wissen , 'know' | weiß, weißt, weiß | wußte | wußte | — | — | gewußt |
| Wollen , 'will' | will, willst, will | wollte | wollte | — | — | gewollt |
| Zeihen , 'accuse' | — | — | <i>zeich</i> | <i>ziehe</i> | — | gezichen |
| Ziehen , 'draw' | (ziehest, ziehst) | <i>zog</i> | <i>zöge</i> | (zieh) | gezogen | |
| Zwingen , 'force' | — | — | <i>zwang</i> | <i>zwänge</i> | — | gezwungen |

INDEX.

 THE REFERENCES ARE TO PARAGRAPHS.

absolute accusative, 187c.
accent, 43.
accusative with prepositions, 174-175; two object accusatives, 185; other accusative constructions, 186-187.
address, pronouns used in, 85.
adjectives, 70-82; declension, 70-77; used as nouns, 78; as adverbs, 79, 82, 169a; comparison of, 80-82; derivation of, 211; compound adjectives, 215.
adjective clause, 205d.
adverbs, 169-170; adjectives used as, 79, 82, 169a; comparison of, 170.
adverbial clause, 205e.
adverbial genitive, 183a.
alphabet, 1-2.
arrangement of the sentence, 125, 133, 140, 148, 202-6.
articles, inflection, 48; uses, 49-50.
auxiliary verbs, of tense, 122; of mode 142-146.
bringen, 132.
capital letters, 2.
cardinal numerals, 112-114.
cases, 44; special uses of, 181-187.
classes of the first noun-declension, 54-61.
comparison of adjectives, 80-82; of adverbs, 170.
compound forms of the verb, 126-128.
compound verbs, 159-168; separable, 161-162; inseparable, 163-167; separable or inseparable, 168.
compound words, 212-215; verbs, 213; nouns, 214; adjectives, 215.
conditional sentences, 191 c.d.
conjugation, 118-168; simple forms, 118; principal parts, 119; auxiliaries, 122-124; compound forms, 126-128; New conjugation, 120b, 129-132; Old conjugation, 120a, 134-139; mixed conjugation, 141-147; passive, 149-154; reflexive, 155-156; impersonal, 157-158; compound, 159-168.
conjunctions, 177-180.
consonants, pronunciation of, 19-42.
dative with prepositions, 173, 175; other dative constructions, 184.
declension, 44-117; of articles, 48; of nouns, 51-69; of adjectives; 70-77; of pronouns, 83-111; of numerals, 114.
demonstrative pronouns, 91-95.
dentre, 132.
dependent clauses and their order, 205.
derivation, 207-211; of verbs, 208; of nouns, 209-210; of adjectives, 211.
diphthongs, pronunciation of, 14-18.
dürfen, 142-146.
ein, as article, 48; as numeral, 114a.
English and German, relations of, 216-217.

es, uses of, 87; its omission as impersonal subject, 158.
 etwas, 78b, 109.
 foreign nouns, declension of, 65; gender, 46e.
 feminine nouns, 46b.
 gender, 45-47.
 genitive with prepositions, 172; other genitive constructions, 182-183.
 German language, relations of, to English, 216-217; to other languages, 216; its age and periods, 218.
 Grimm's Law of correspondences among Germanic words, 217.
 haben, 122a.
 imperative mode, 118, 124, 191b.
 impersonal verbs, 157, 158.
 indefinite article, 48; pronouns, 107-111.
 indirect discourse, subjunctive of, 192.
 infinitive, 118, 119, 121; constructions of, 193-198.
 inseparable compound verbs, 163-168.
 interrogative pronouns, 96-100.
 inverted order of the sentence, 202, 204.
 jemand, 108.
 können, 142-146.
 lassen, 143b.
 man, 107.
 manch, 110.
 masculine nouns, 46a.
 measurement, expression of, 115.
 mixed conjugation, 141-147.
 mixed declension of nouns, 64; of adjectives, 78.
 modal auxiliaries, 142-146.
 modified vowels, 10-13.
 mögen, 142-146.
 müssen, 142-146.

neuter nouns, 46c.
 New conjugation of verbs, 120b, 129-132.
 nichts, 78b, 109.
 niemand, 108.
 normal order of sentence, 202-203.
 nouns, 51-69; first declension, 53-61; second declension, 62-63; irregular declension, 64; foreign nouns, 65; proper names, 66-69; adjectives as nouns, 78; derivation of nouns, 209-210; compound nouns, 214.
 numerals, 112-117; rules of use of, 115.
 Old conjugation of verbs, 120a, 134-139.
 order of the sentence, 202-206.
 ordinal numerals, 116.
 participles, 118; their construction, 199-201.
 passive verbs, 149-154.
 personal pronouns, 83-87.
 possessives, 88-90.
 prefixes, verbal, 159; separable, 160, 168; inseparable, 163, 168.
 prefixes making nouns and adjectives, 210, 211c.
 prepositions, 171-176; governing genitive, 172; dative, 173; accusative, 174; dative or accusative, 175; infinitive, 197.
 present tense, senses of, 122b, 189.
 preterit tense, senses of, 122b, 189b.
 principal parts of a verb, 119.
 pronouns, 83-111; personal, 83-87; possessives, 88-90; demonstratives, 91-95; interrogatives, 96-100; relatives, 101-106; indefinite, 107-111.

pronunciation, **3-42**; of vowels, **3-18**; of consonants, **19-42**.

proper nouns, inflection of, **66-69**.

quantity of vowels, **3**.

reflexive pronouns, **84**; verbs, **155-156**.

relative pronouns, **101-106**.

sein, **122c**.

separable compound verbs, **161-162, 168**.

folch, **110**.

füllen, **142-146**.

spazieren, **196**.

strong conjugation, see Old conjugation.

subjunctive mode, uses of, **191-192**.

subordinating conjunctions, **180**.

substantive clause, **205c**.

suffixes forming nouns, **209c**; adjectives, **211b**.

superlative phrases, **82b-e**.

time, accusative of, **187**; genitive, **183**.

time of day, expression of, **115d**.

transposed order of sentence, **202, 205**.

umlauts, **10-13**.

verbs, conjugation of, see conjugation; compound verbs, **159-168, 213**; derivative verbs, **208**.

vowels, pronunciation of, **3-18**.

was, **78b, 100b, 103c**.

was für, **99**.

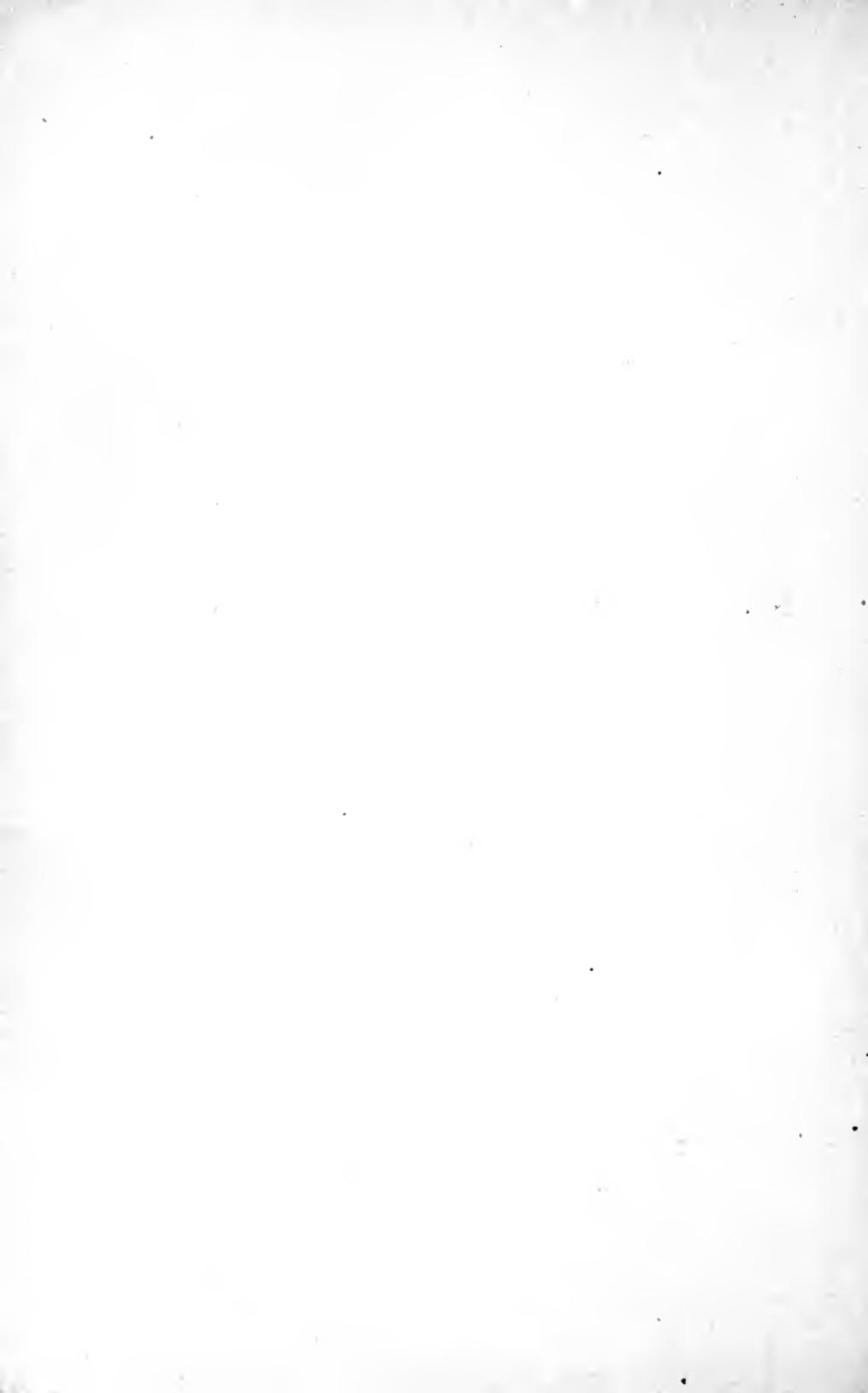
weak conjugation, see New conjugation.

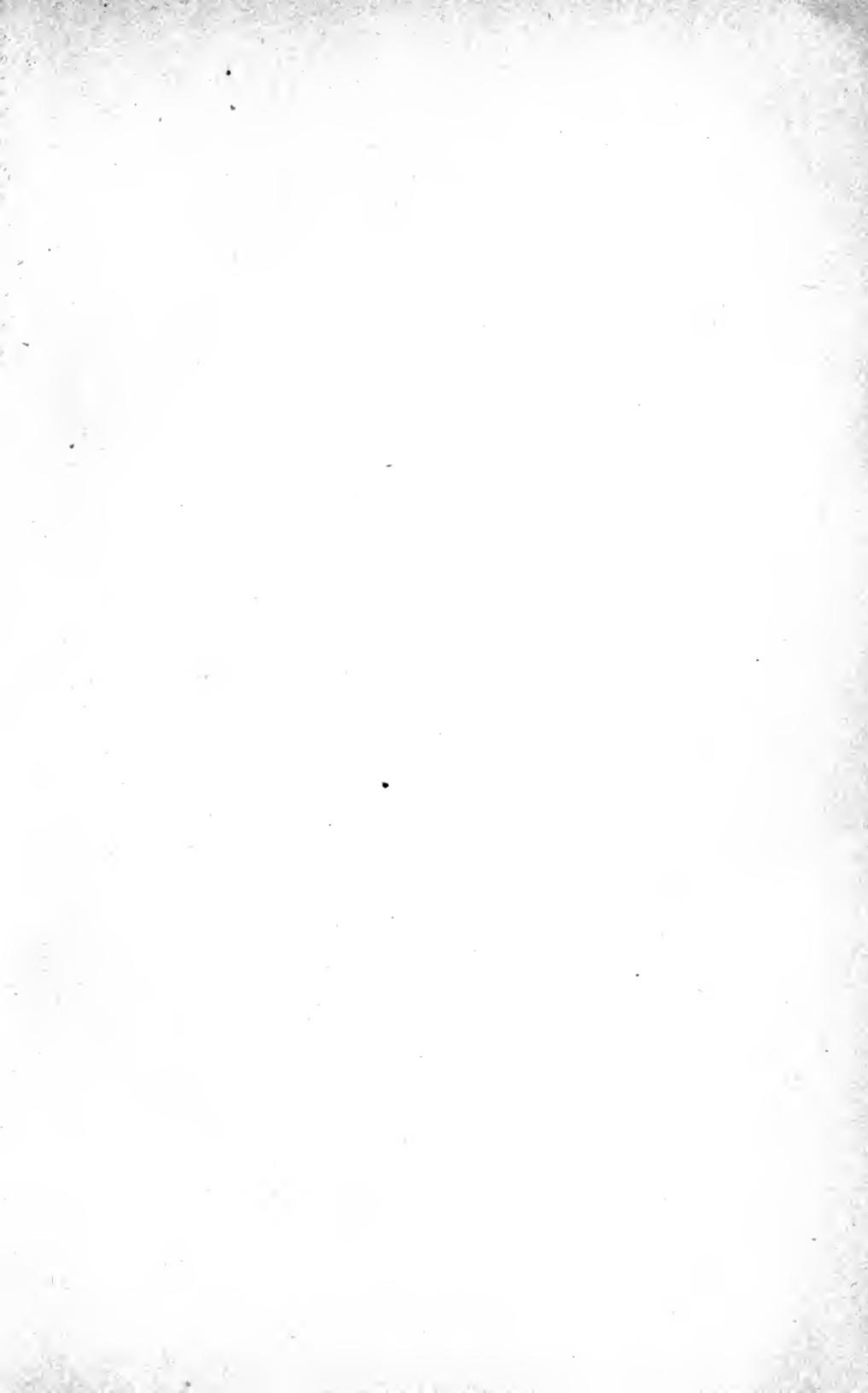
werden, **122d, 149-150**.

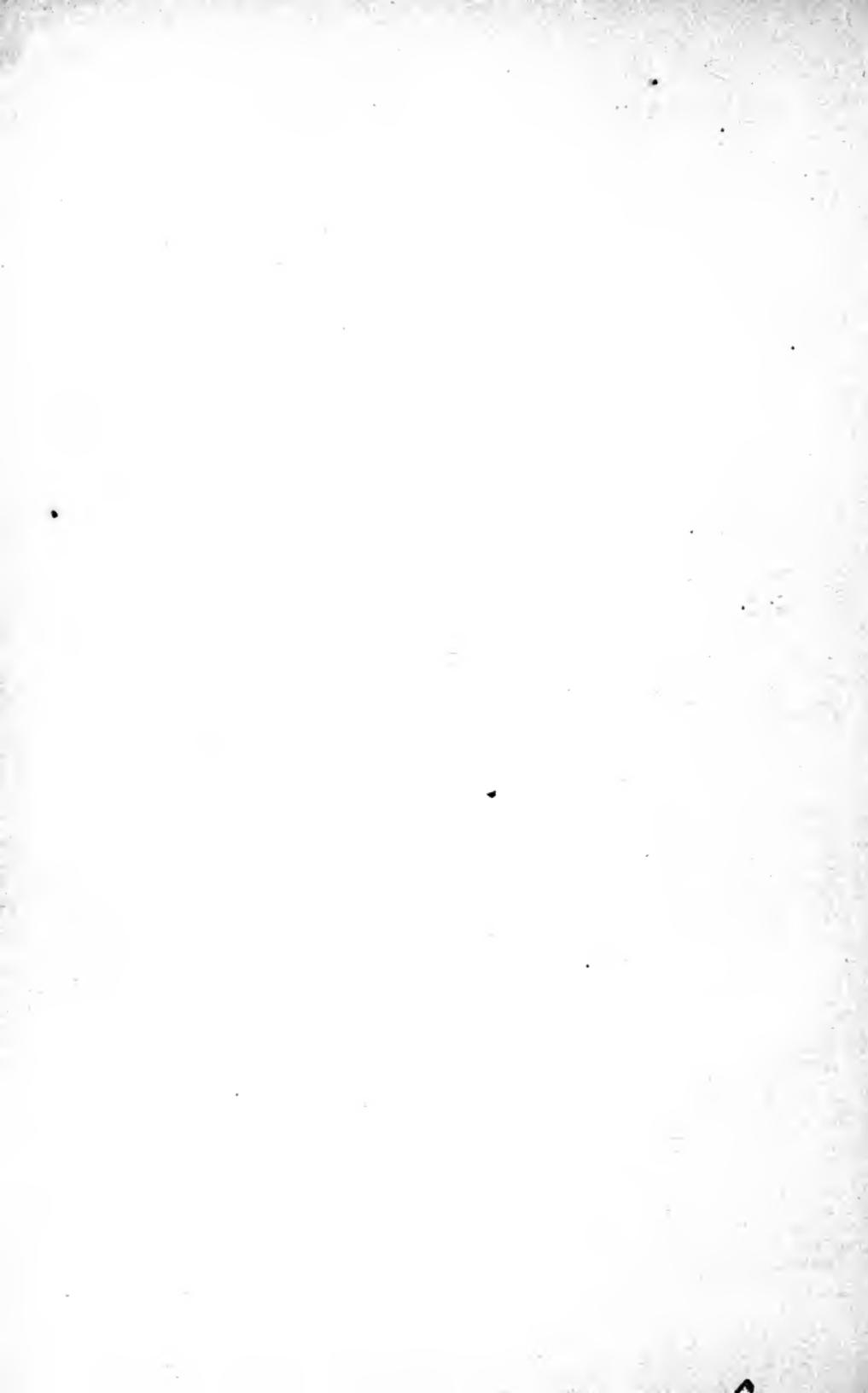
wissen, **147**.

wollen, **142-146**.

zu with infinitive, **110, 194**.







HENRY HOLT & CO.'S EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

ENGLISH.

~~✓~~ The prices are for cloth lettered, unless otherwise expressed.

American Science Series, for High Schools and Colleges. 12mo.

I. Newcomb & Holden's Astronomy, *Advanced course*, \$2.50;
Briefer course, \$1.40. II. Packard's Zoology, *Advanced course*,
\$3.00; *Briefer course*, \$1.40; *Elementary course*, \$1.00. III.
Bessey's Botany, *Advanced course*, \$2.75; *Briefer course*,
\$1.35. IV. Martin's Human Body, *Advanced course*, \$2.75;
Briefer course, \$1.50; *Elementary course*, 90 cts. V. Walker's
Political Economy, *Advanced course*, \$2.25; *Briefer course*, \$1.50.
VI. Remsen's Chemistry, *Briefer course*, \$1.40.

| | |
|--|--------|
| Arthur, Barnes & Coulter. Plant Dissection. | \$1 50 |
| Bain. Brief English Grammar. 18mo. Boards, 45c.; Key. | 45 |
| — Higher English Grammar. | 1 00 |
| — Composition Grammar. | 1 40 |
| Cairns. Quantitative Analysis. 8vo. | 2 00 |
| Champlin. Young Folks' Catechism. 16mo. | 60 |
| — Young Folks' Astronomy. 16mo. | 60 |
| — Cyclopædia of Common Things. Large 12mo. | 2 50 |
| — Cyclopædia of Persons and Places. Large 12mo. | 2 50 |
| Clark. Practical Rhetoric. 12mo. | 1 50 |
| Corson. Handbook of Anglo-Saxon and Early English. 12mo. | 2 50 |
| Cox. Mythology. 16mo. | 90 |
| Freeman. Historical Course for Schools. 16mo. | |
| I. General Sketch of History, \$1.40. II. History of England, \$1.10. | |
| III. History of Scotland, \$1.00. IV. History of Italy, \$1.00. V. | |
| History of Germany, \$1.00. VI. History of the United States, \$1.25. | |
| VII. History of France, \$1.00. | |
| Gallaudet. Manual of International Law. 12mo. | 1 60 |
| Gardiner. English History for Schools. 16mo. | 1 00 |
| — Introduction to English History. 16mo. | 1 00 |
| Gostwick and Harrison. Outlines of German Literature. 12mo. | 2 50 |
| Handbooks for Students and General Readers:—Ball's Astronomy, 6oc. | |
| McGuthrie's Practical Physics, 6oc. Johnson's The Studio Art, 6oc. | |
| Macalister's Zoology, \$1.00. Johnston's American Politics, \$1.00. Lounsbury's English Language, \$1.00. Ball's Mechanics, 6oc. Bain's Higher English Grammar, \$1.00. McNab's Botany, \$1.00. Otis' Elementary German, 90c. Banister's Music, \$1.00. | |
| Johnston. History of the United States. 12mo, \$1.25; <i>Briefer</i> . | |
| Koehler. Practical Botany. 12mo. | 2 50 |
| Lacomb. The Growth of a People. 16mo. | 1 00 |
| Macloskie. Elements of Botany. 12mo. | 1 60 |
| Newcomb. Algebra for Schools, \$1.20 (Key \$1.20). Plane Geometry and Trigonometry, with Tables, \$1.40. Algebra for Colleges, \$1.60 (Key \$1.60). Elements of Geometry, \$1.50. Essentials of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, with 3 and 4 place Tables, \$1.25. Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, with Tables, \$2.00. Trigonometry (separate), \$1.50; Tables (separate), \$1.40. Analytical Geometry, \$1.50. Calculus. | |
| Packard. Guide to the Study of Insects. 8vo. | 5 00 |
| Phillips & Beebe. Graphic Algebra. 8vo. | 2 00 |
| Porter. Outlines of the Constitutional History of the United States. 12mo. | 1 50 |
| Sewell and Urbino. Dictation Exercises. 16mo. Boards. | 55 |
| Skinner. Approximate Computations. 16mo. | 1 20 |

| | |
|--|--------|
| Siglar. English Grammar. 12mo. Boards..... | \$0 70 |
| Step. Plant Life. 12mo..... | I 25 |
| Sumner. Problems in Political Economy..... | I 25 |
| Taine. English Literature. Condensed for Schools. 12mo..... | I 75 |
| White. Classic Literature. 12mo..... | 2 00 |
| Witt. Classic Mythology. 12mo..... | I 25 |
| Yonge (Miss). Landmarks of History. I. Ancient. 12mo. 95c.; II. Mediæval. 12mo, \$1.00; III. Modern. 12mo, \$1.30; Kings of England. 16mo..... | 95 |
| Zeller. Greek Philosophy..... | I 75 |

FRENCH.

| | |
|---|--------|
| Æsop. Fables in French. With a Dictionary. 18mo..... | \$0 65 |
| Aliot-Boymier. Les Auteurs Contemporaine. With Notes, 12mo..... | I 50 |
| Aubert. Colloquial French Drill. 16mo..... | 60 |
| —Littérature Française I Année. 16mo..... | I 25 |
| Bellows. French and English Dictionary. 32mo. Roan, with tucks..... | 3 00 |
| The same, Morocco, with tucks..... | 3 65 |

Bibliothèque d'Instruction et de Recréation.

| | |
|---|--|
| Achard—Clos-Pommier, et les Prisonniers, par Xavier de Maistre, 85 cents. Bédolliere—Mère Michel. New Vocabulary, by Pylodet, 75 cents. Biographies des Musiciens Célèbres, \$1.25. Carraud—Contes, \$1.00. Choix de Contes Contemporains, \$1.25. Erckmann-Chatrian—Conscrit de 1813. With Notes, \$1.10. Erckmann-Chatrian—Le Blocus. With Notes, \$1.25. Erckmann-Chatrian—Madame Thérèse. With Notes, \$1.10. Fallet—Princes de l'Art, \$1.50. Feuillet—Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre, \$1.10. Feval—Chouans et Bleus. With Notes, \$1.00. Foa—Contes Biographiques. With Vocab., \$1.00. —Petit Robinson de Paris. With Vocab., 85 cents. Macé—Bouchée de Pain. With Vocab., \$1.25. Maistre—Œuvres Complètes, \$1.40. Porchat—Trois Mois sous la Neige, 85 cents. Pressensé—Rosa. With Vocab., \$1.25. Saint-Germain—Pour une Epingle. With Vocab., 95 cents. Sand—Petite Fadette, \$1.25. Segur—Contes, \$1.00. Souvestre—Philosophe sous les Toits, 75 cents. | |
|---|--|

| | |
|--|------|
| Borel. Grammaire Française. 12mo | I 60 |
| Buckingham's Eugène. French Grammar and Exercises. 12mo..... | I 60 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| —Elementary French Lessons. 12mo..... | 75 |
|---------------------------------------|----|

| | |
|---|------|
| Bulwer. Lady of Lyons. For translating into French. By B. Maurice. 12mo | I 00 |
|---|------|

| | |
|--|----|
| Delille. Condensed French Instruction. 18mo..... | 50 |
|--|----|

| | |
|--|----|
| Fisher. Easy French Reading. With Vocabulary. 16mo | 95 |
|--|----|

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Fleury. Histoire de France. 12mo..... | I 40 |
|---------------------------------------|------|

| | |
|---|----|
| —Ancient History. Translated, with Notes. 12mo..... | 85 |
|---|----|

| | |
|---|------|
| Gasc. French-English Dictionary. 8vo..... | 3 75 |
|---|------|

| | |
|--|------|
| —do. do. 18mo. Pocket Edition, \$1.40. 2 vols. | I 60 |
|--|------|

| | |
|--|------|
| —Translator. (English into French) | I 25 |
|--|------|

| | |
|---|----|
| Gibert. Introductory French Manual. 12mo..... | 85 |
|---|----|

| | |
|--|------|
| Janon, De. Recueil de Poésies. 16mo..... | I 00 |
|--|------|

| | |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Jeu des Auteurs. In a box..... | I 00 |
|--------------------------------|------|

| | |
|--|------|
| Julien's Petites Leçons de Conversation et de Grammaire. Sq. 12mo..... | I 00 |
|--|------|

| | |
|---|----|
| —Practical and Conversational Reader. Sq. 12mo..... | 90 |
|---|----|

| | |
|--|----|
| Lacombe. Histoire du Peuple Française. 16mo..... | 75 |
|--|----|

| | |
|--|----|
| Maistre (X. de). Voyage autour de ma Chambre. 12mo. Paper..... | 45 |
|--|----|

| | |
|--|----|
| Moutonnier. Les Premiers pas dans l'Etude du Français. 12mo..... | 90 |
|--|----|

| | |
|---|----|
| Musset. Un Caprice, Comédie. 12mo. Paper..... | 30 |
|---|----|

| | |
|---|----|
| Otto. French Conversation Grammar. 12mo. Roan, \$1.60; Key..... | 75 |
|---|----|

| | |
|--|------|
| —Bôcher's French Reader. 12mo. Roan..... | I 40 |
|--|------|

| | |
|--|----|
| —First Book in French. 12mo. Boards..... | 35 |
|--|----|

| | |
|---|------|
| —Introductory French Lessons. 12mo..... | I 25 |
|---|------|

| | |
|---|------|
| —Introductory French Reader. 12mo | I 00 |
|---|------|

| | |
|--|--|
| Parlez-vous Français? or Do You Speak French? 18mo. Boards.... | |
|--|--|

| | |
|---|--|
| Plays. College Series of Modern French Plays. With English Notes by Prof. Bôcher. 12mo. Paper. La joie Fait Peur, 30 cents; La Bataille des Dames, 35 cents; La Maison de Penarvan, 35 cents; | |
|---|--|

| | |
|--|--------|
| La Poudre aux Yeux, 35 cents ; Les Petits Oiseaux, 35 cents ; Mademoiselle de la Seiglière, 35 cents ; Le Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre, 35 cents ; Les Doigts de Féé, 35 cents ; Jean Baudry, 35 cents. The foregoing in two volumes. 12mo. Cloth. Each vol..... | \$1 60 |
| <i>Modern French Comedies.</i> Le Village, 25 cents ; La Cagnotte, 35 cents ; Les Femmes qui Pleurent, 25 cents ; Les Petites Misères de la vie Humaine, 25 cents ; La Niaise de St. Flour, 25 cents ; Trois Proverbes, 30 cents ; Valerie, 30 cents ; Le Collier de Perles, 30 cents. The three last named have vocabularies. | |
| <i>Selected French Comedies.</i> Text and English translation on opposite pages. Arranged by Baptiste Méras. 12mo. Paper. I. En Wagon. By Eugène Verconsin, 35 cents. II. C'Etais Gertrude. By Eugène Verconsin | 35 |
| <i>French Plays for Children.</i> With Vocabularies. 12mo. Paper. La Vieille Cousine : Les Ricochets, 25 cents ; Le Testament de Madame Patural ; La Madeinoise de St. Cyr, 25 cents ; La Petite Maman ; Le Bracelet, 25 cents ; La Lotterie de Francfort ; Jeune Savante, 25 cents. | |
| <i>Student's Collection of Classic French Plays.</i> With full notes by Prof. E. S. Joynes. 12mo. Paper. 50 cents per vol. <i>Corneille.</i> Le Cid. <i>Cinna.</i> Horace. <i>Racine.</i> Athalie. <i>Molière.</i> Le Misanthrope. <i>L'Avare.</i> Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme. <i>Racine.</i> Esther, 40 cents. <i>Les Plaideurs.</i> The foregoing in 3 vols. 12mo. Cloth. Per vol. | 1 50 |
| <i>Pylodet's Beginning French.</i> 16mo. Boards..... | 55 |
| — Beginner's French Reader. With illustrations. 16mo. Boards..... | 55 |
| — Second French Reader. With illustrations..... | 1 10 |
| — La Littérature Française Classique. 12mo..... | 1 60 |
| — La Littérature Française Contemporaine. 12mo..... | 1 40 |
| — Gouttes de Rosée. French Lyric Poetry. 18mo..... | 65 |
| — Mère L'Oie. Illustrated. 8vo. Boards..... | 50 |
| Riodu. Lucie. French and English Conversations. 12mo..... | 75 |
| Sadler. Translating English into French. 12mo..... | 1 25 |
| Stern and Méras. Etude Progressive de La Langue Française. 12mo.. | 1 50 |
| Whitney. French Grammar. 12mo..... | |
| Witcomb and Bellenger. French Conversation. 18mo..... | 65 |
| Zender. Abécédaire, French and English Primer. 12mo. Boards.. | 50 |

G E R M A N.

 The prices are for paper covers, unless otherwise expressed.

| | |
|---|--------|
| <i>Evans.</i> Otto's German Reader. Half Roan..... | \$1 35 |
| Game for German Conversation. In a box..... | 1 00 |
| <i>Heness.</i> Der Neue Leitfaden. 12mo. Cloth..... | 1 50 |
| — Der Sprechlehrer unter seinen Schülern..... | 1 35 |
| <i>Huss's</i> Oral Instruction in German. 12mo..... | 1 35 |
| <i>Keetels</i> ' Oral Method with German. 12mo. Half Roan..... | 1 60 |
| <i>Klemm.</i> Lese und Sprachbücher. In 8 konzentrischen Kreisen. 12mo.. | |
| — Geschichte der Deutschen Literatur..... | 1 50 |
| <i>Lessing.</i> Minna von Barnhelm. In English with German Notes. 12mo. | 50 |
| <i>Otis</i> ' Elementary Grammar. Text in Roman | 90 |
| <i>Otto.</i> German Grammar. 12mo. Roan, \$1.60 ; Key..... | 75 |
| — Evans' German Reader. With Notes and Vocab. 12mo. Roan.... | 1 35 |
| — First Book in German. 12mo. Boards | 35 |
| — Introductory Lessons ; or, Beginning German. 12mo. Cloth..... | 95 |
| — Introductory Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. 12mo. Cloth.. | 1 20 |
| <i>Otto.</i> Translating English into German. 12mo, \$1.60. Key. | 1 00 |
| <i>Plays.</i> College Series of German Plays. 12mo. Paper. | |
| — <i>Görner.</i> Englisch. Ein Lustspiel. 30c. <i>Putlitz.</i> Badekuren. Ein Lustspiel. With Notes, 30c. <i>Putlitz.</i> Das Herz Vergessen. Ein Lustspiel. With Notes, 30c. Three German Comedies. I. Elz. Er ist nicht eifersüchtig ; II. Benedix. Der Weiberfeind ; III. Müller. Im Wartesaalon Erster Classe. The three together, 35c. <i>Wilhelmi.</i> Einer muss heirathen ; and, <i>Benedix.</i> Eigensinn. With Notes..... | 35 |
| <i>Student's Classic German Plays.</i> 12mo. Paper. | |
| — <i>Goethe.</i> Egmont, 50c. Herrmann und Dorothea, 35c. <i>Koerner.</i> | |

STANDARD EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|---|--|--|---|--|---|---|--|---|
| Zriny, 60c. | Lessing. | Minna von Barnhelm in English; Notes for translating into German, 50c. | Emilia Galotti, 35c. | Schiller. | Wallenstein's Lager, with Notes, 40c. | Die Piccolomini, with Notes, 50c. | Wallenstein's Tod, with Notes, 50c. | Wallenstein, complete; with Notes, 12mo, cloth, \$1.50. | Jungfrau von Orleans, with Notes, 50c. | Der Neffe als Onkel, with Notes and Vocabulary, 50c. | See also under Whitney. |
| Simonson. | German Ballad Book. | With Notes. 12mo. | Cloth..... | \$1 40 | | | | | | | |
| | Sprechen Sie Deutsch? | or, Do You Speak German? | 18mo. Boards... | 50 | | | | | | | |
| Stern. | Studien und Plaudereien. | 12mo. | I. Series, \$1.35. | II. Series, 1 50 | | | | | | | |
| — | Selected German Comedies. | Prepared for Students. | With Tables of Difficulties (in German) by Sigmon M. Stern. | 12mo. Paper. | | | | | | | |
| I. | Rosen's Ein Knopf, 30c. | II. Von Moser's Der Schimmel, 30c. | III. Königswinter's Sie hat ihr Herz entdeckt, 40c. | IV. Claar's Simson und Delila, 30c. | V. Jungman's Er sucht einen Vetter, 30c. | VI. Paul's Er muss tanzen, 30c. | VII. Friedrich's Gänshen von Buchenau, 40c. | | | | |
| Storme. | Easy German Reading. | 16mo. | Cloth..... | | | | | | | | 95 |
| Unterhaltungs Bibliothek. | 12mo. | Paper. | | | | | | | | | |
| Andersen's | Bilderbuch ohne Bilder, with Notes, 30c. | Die Eisjungfrau, und andere Geschichten with Notes, 50c. | Carove's Das Märchen ohne Ende, 25c. | Eichendorf's Aus dem Leben eines Taugenichts, 50c. | Fouqué's Undine, with Vocabulary, 40c. | Sintram, 40c. | Grimm's Die Venus von Milo; Rafael und Michel-Angelo, 50c. | Kinder und Hausmärchen, with Notes, 50c. | Heine's Die Harzreise und Das Buch Le Grand, with Notes, 60c. | Heyse's Die Einsamen, 25c. | Anfang und Ende, 30c. |
| | Hillern's Höher als die Kirche, 25c. | Mügge's Signa die Seterin, 30c. | Riukan Voss, 30c. | Müller's Deutsche Liebe, 40c. | Nathusius's Tagebuch eines armen Fräuleins, 60c. | Ploennies's Prinzessin Ilse, with Notes, 25c. | Putlitz's Was sich der Wald erzählt, 30c. | Vergissmeinnicht, 25c. | Schiller's Das Lied von der Glocke, with Notes, 40c. | Storm's Immensee, with Notes, 25c. | Tieck's Die Elfen; das Rothkäppchen, with Notes, 35c. |
| Whitney-Klemm German Series. | 12mo. Cloth. | I. Rudiments of German. | II. German by Practice. \$1.10. | III. Elementary Reader, 1 co | | | | | | | |
| Whitney. | Prof. W. D. Brief German Grammar. | 12mo. Cloth..... | | | | | | | | | |
| — | German Grammar. | 12mo. Roan..... | | | | | | | | | 1 50 |
| — | German Reader. | 12mo. Roan..... | | | | | | | | | 1 80 |
| — | German-English and English-German Dictionary. | 12mo. Cloth... | | | | | | | | | 3 50 |
| — | German Texts: Annotated by leading instructors and edited by Prof. W. D. Whitney, 12mo. Cloth. | I. Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm, 75c. | II. Schiller's Wilhelm Tell, 75c. | III. Goethe's Faust, 80c. | IV. Goethe's Iphigenie auf Tauris, 75c. | V. Schiller's Maria Stuart, 80c. | VI. Lessing's Nathan der Weise, 75c. | | | | |
| Williams' German Conversation and Composition. | 12mo..... | | | | | | | | | | 1 00 |
| Witcomb and Otto's German Conversations. By L. Pylodet. | 18mo. Cloth | | | | | | | | | | 65 |

ITALIAN.

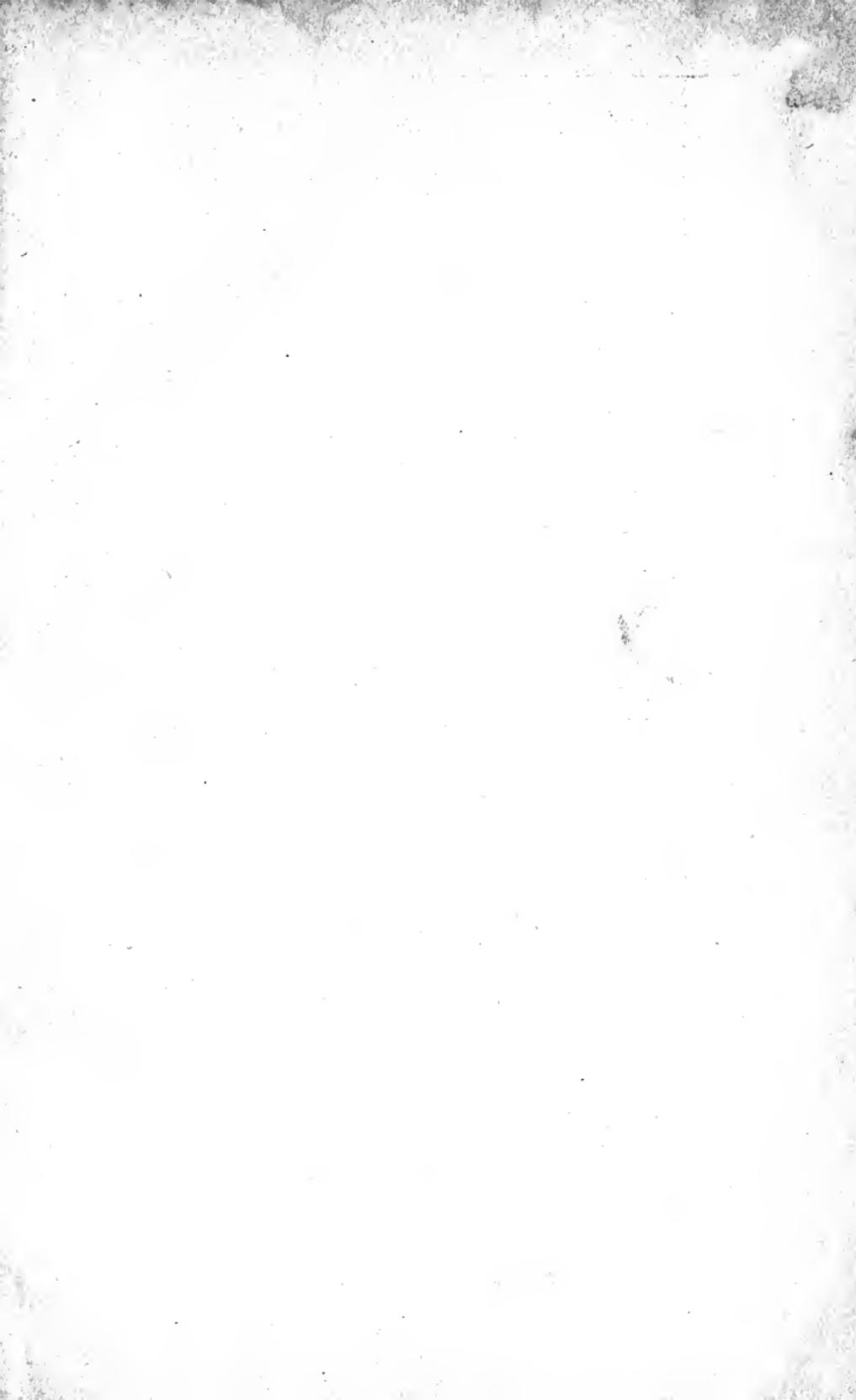
| | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|------------------|----|
| Cuore. | Italian Grammar. | 12mo. Roan. | \$1.50; Key..... | 75 |
| Ongaro. | La Rosa Dell' Alpi. | With Notes. 12mo. | Paper..... | 75 |
| Nota (Alberto). | La Fiera. | With Notes. 12mo. | Paper..... | 75 |
| Parlate Italiano? | or, Do You Speak Italian? | 16mo. | Boards..... | 50 |
| Pellico. | Francesca da Rimini. | 12mo. | Paper..... | 75 |

LATIN AND GREEK.

| | | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|--|------|
| Brooks. | Introduction to Attic Greek. | 12mo..... | | \$ |
| Goodell. | The Greek in English. | 16mo..... | | |
| Preparatory Greek and Latin Texts. | 12mo..... | | | 1 50 |
| — | Latin Part separately. | 12mo..... | | 1 00 |
| — | Greek Part separately. | 12mo..... | | 75 |

HENRY HOLT & CO., PUBLISHERS, NEW YORK.









849
W623

206577

W623

